

System Requirements

TABLE OF CONTENTS

COMMSERVE

Enterprise Version
Express Version

MEDIA AGENTS

COMMCELL CONSOLE

CommCell Console as a Stand-Alone Application
CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application

BACKUP & RECOVERY AGENTS

Active Directory *iDataAgent*
DB2 *iDataAgent*
DB2 DBF *iDataAgent*
Documentum *iDataAgent*
External Data Connector
Image Level *iDataAgent*
Informix *iDataAgent*
Lotus Notes/Domino Server *iDataAgents*
Macintosh File System *iDataAgent*
Microsoft Data Protection Manager *iDataAgent*
Microsoft Exchange Server *iDataAgents*

- Microsoft Exchange Database *iDataAgent*
- Microsoft Exchange Mailbox *iDataAgent*
- Microsoft Exchange Public Folder *iDataAgent*

Microsoft SharePoint Server *iDataAgent*
Microsoft SQL Server *iDataAgent*
Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*
MySQL *iDataAgent*
NAS *iDataAgent*
Novell Directory Services *iDataAgent*
Novell GroupWise *iDataAgent*
OES File System *iDataAgent*
Oracle *iDataAgent*
Oracle RAC *iDataAgent*
PostgreSQL *iDataAgent*
ProxyHost *iDataAgent*
SAP for MAXDB *iDataAgent*
SAP for Oracle *iDataAgent*
Sybase *iDataAgent*
Unix File System *iDataAgent*

- AIX
- HP-UX
- FreeBSD
- Linux
- Solaris
- Tru64
- Unix Virtualization

Virtual Server *iDataAgent*

- Microsoft/Hyper-V
- VMware
- Xen

LAPTOP

Macintosh
Linux
Windows

WORKSTATION BACKUP AGENT

Workstation Backup Agent - Source
Workstation Backup Agent - Destination

SEARCH AND BROWSE

[Trademarks](#) | [Terms of Use](#) |
© Bull SAS. All rights reserved.

Web Search Server
Web Search Client

ARCHIVE MANAGEMENT AGENTS

Domino Mailbox Archiver Agent
Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent
Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent
File Archiver for Unix Agent
File Archiver for Windows Agent
SharePoint Archiver Agent
File Archiver for BlueArc Agent
File Archiver for Celerra Agent
File Archiver for NetApp Agent
Generic NAS File Archiver
Content Indexing Engine
Object Link

CONTINUOUSDATAREPLICATOR

SRM

SRM Server
SRM Exchange Agent
SRM NAS Agent
SRM Netware Proxy Agent
SRM Oracle Agent
SRM SharePoint Agent
SRM SQL Agent
SRM UNIX File System Agent
SRM for Virtual Server
SRM Windows File System Agent

COMMNET

CommNet Server
CommNet Browser

OTHERS

1-Touch for Windows
1-Touch for AIX
1-Touch for HP-UX
1-Touch for Linux
1-Touch for Solaris
Books Online
Extended Support and Deprecated Products and Platforms
Product Obsolescence Policy

System Requirements - CommServe

Enterprise Version | Express Version

The following requirements are for the Enterprise version of the CommServe:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2012	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2012 Editions See Considerations for Microsoft Windows Server 2012, 2012 R2, and Windows 8 for more information.	Dual 1 GHz minimum required
	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions	Dual 1 GHz minimum required
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* *Core and Web Server Editions not supported	Dual 1 GHz minimum required
	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 2 *Web Server Editions not supported	Dual 1 GHz minimum required

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

2.1 GB of local disk space for the CommServe software, including database and log file growth, and the Microsoft SQL Server application and database. (The SQL software is embedded in the CommServe software installation.)

500 MB of temp space on the drive on which the Operating System and `temp` directory resides. (This space is used for temporary files copied during the installation or upgrade of the Microsoft SQL Server and CommServe software.)

1.5 GB of permanently available disk space on a local or mapped network drive for CommServe Disaster Recovery. (CommServe Disaster Recovery is a feature that secures the metadata of the CommServe.)

In time, you may need to provide additional space (several GB) to allow for growth in the CommServe metadata. The size of the metadata depends on the number of computers in the CommCell and the quantity of data stored.

MEMORY

16 GB RAM minimum required

To achieve higher scalability, it is recommended to deploy the CommServe on a physical server with 32 GB memory and Solid-state-disk (SSD). Refer to CommCell Scalability Guide for additional details.

DATABASE ENGINE

Calypso includes a license for Microsoft SQL Server 2008 (Enterprise Edition). Microsoft SQL Server 2008 database instance with Service Pack 1 will be automatically installed while installing the CommServe. Later SQL Server service packs and updates must be installed manually. We recommend to maintain the SQL Server up-to-date with any important updates released by Microsoft.

Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Editions and SQL Server 2012 (SP1) are also supported. If using SQL Server 2012, it is required that you install the Cumulative Update Package 3 and review the recommendations listed in Considerations for SQL Server 2012.

The Microsoft SQL Server application that is installed on the computer must be dedicated to support the software and cannot be shared by other applications.

In a clustered environment, Microsoft SQL Server 2008 (Enterprise Edition) with the appropriate service pack must be installed and clustered prior to installing the CommServe software. The CommServe software automatically uses the default or the named instance created during the SQL installation.

RECOMMENDED SQL SERVER SETTINGS

The database instance used by the software requires specific SQL server settings. Using the SQL Management Studio, verify the SQL properties listed below.

SQL MEMORY SIZE

Access the server properties and navigate to the **Memory** page. The maximum server memory should be 50% of the physical memory available in the computer on which the software is installed.

SERVER COLLATION

Run the `sp_helpsort` system stored procedure, and verify that the server default collation has the following properties:

- Character Set is `1252/ISO` (default)
- Sort Order is `Dictionary order, and case is Insensitive`
- Unicode Collation includes `General Unicode, case Insensitive, width Insensitive`

TEMP DATABASE PROPERTIES

Navigate to the `tempdb` database (under the **Databases | System Databases** node), and access its properties to verify the following:

- The `tempdb` database has at least 100 MB of disk space. Depending on the components that you decide to install later, additional space may be needed.
- Click the **Files** page to check the autogrowth properties of the database files. The **Enable Autogrowth** option must be selected, and the file growth should be set to 20%

SERVICE ACCOUNTS

For Service Accounts, use the same Local System account for each service and enable auto-start for SQL services.

On clustered environments, use an account with administrator privileges (such as, a member of the Administrator local group of the computer or domain).

HARDWARE VALIDATION FOR COMMSERVE DATABASE

The CommServe database needs to be on a fast disk for optimal backup performance. Before setting up the CommServe, the storage volumes must be validated for high performance. This can be done using IO meter tool which measures the IOPs (Input Output Operations per second). For more information, see IOPs for CommServe Database Volumes.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

INTERNET EXPLORER

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) version 8.0, 9.0

JAVA SUPPORT

The software supports Java 7 or higher*.

Java 7 versions are supported with Calypso Service Pack 8 or higher. Previous service pack versions do not fully support this version.

If a JRE version 1.7.0_17 or higher is available, the software will use the existing JRE software.

If a JRE version lower than 1.7.0_17 is available, or no JRE version is available at all, you will be prompted to install JRE version 1.7.0_17

*The Backup Time selection in the Advanced Options area of the Find dialog box is not compatible with Java 7 or higher.

COMMSERVE DATABASE ON CIFS

The CommServe's SQL database is not supported on a CIFS share.

RECOMMENDATION FOR USING VIRTUAL MACHINES

MEMORY

- Allocate multiple virtual CPUs to a virtual machine, if the anticipated SQL Server workload can take advantage of all the virtual CPUs.
- Memory page sharing and memory ballooning must be enabled on the virtual machine.

STORAGE

SQL Data files and log files must reside on different disks (different VMFS). It is recommended to place the log files on RAID 1+0 or RAID 1 disks.

NETWORK

Make sure to use the VMXNET virtual network adapter and separate virtual switches, each connected to its own physical network adapter.

NOTES ON COMMSERVE INSTALLATION

The CommServe is a resource intensive application and should be installed on a dedicated server. Therefore, it is recommended that the CommServe not be installed on a computer running other applications, such as Microsoft Exchange Server, an Oracle database, etc. Additionally, CommServe installed on virtual machines generally perform at about 60% capacity compared to physical machines with similar configurations.

The software should not be installed on a compressed drive.

The Enterprise version of the CommServe is not supported on Microsoft Windows Small Business Server platforms. If you wish to install the CommServe on Microsoft Windows Small Business Server platform, you must install the Express version of the CommServe. See the System Requirements for the Express version of the CommServe for more information.

The computer on which the software is installed must have a static IP address. The software does not support Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).

INSTALLING ON A VMWARE ENVIRONMENT

If installing the CommServe on a VMware virtual machine, consider the following recommendations for optimal performance:

- The ESX Server hosting the virtual machine should be vSphere (4.0) or above.
- Disable vMotion for the virtual machine and the storage.
- The virtual machine on which the CommServe will be installed should have:
 - Minimum 2 64-bit vCPUs
 - Minimum 16 GB RAM
 - A Windows Server 2008 x64 Edition operating system
 - All VMware tools and utilities installed
- Minimum bandwidth of 1 Gbps for data transfer.
- The CommServe's SQL database should be configured on shared storage (such as a SAN or FAST disk).

INSTALLING ON A HYPER-V ENVIRONMENT

If installing the CommServe on a Hyper-V virtual machine, consider the following recommendations for optimal performance:

- Hyper-V Server 2008 R2 with Service Pack 1 (or higher) should be used to host the virtual machine.
- The virtual machine on which the CommServe will be installed should have:
 - Minimum 4 64-bit vCPUs
 - Minimum 16 GB RAM
 - A Windows Server 2008 x64 Edition operating system
 - All Hyper-V Integration tools installed using the latest versions
- A fast and dedicated storage as well as network interfaces for optimal performance of the CommServe SQL database.

NOTES ON COMBINED INSTALLATIONS

You will often install more than one module (For example, CommServe, MediaAgent, Client) on a single computer so that it can perform two or more functions. For example, you may want to back up the file system of a MediaAgent; hence, you would install both the MediaAgent and client software on that computer.

When you combine two or more functions on a single computer, the storage resources required to support the software for that computer are not essentially cumulative. This is because modules share some of the same software. As a result, combined installations require about 30 MB less disk space than installations where the software resides on separate computers.

DISCLAIMER


Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - CommServe

Enterprise Version | Express Version

The following requirements are for the Express version of the CommServe:

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
COMPUTER/PROCESSOR	Intel Pentium or compatible 650 MHz processor minimum recommended.
MEMORY	512 MB RAM minimum required Virtual memory should be set to twice the amount of available physical memory.
HARD DISK	2.5 GB of log disk space for installing the software and future data growth.
OPERATING SYSTEM	<p>WINDOWS 7 Microsoft Windows 7 x64 Editions</p> <p>WINDOWS VISTA Microsoft Windows Vista x64 Editions</p> <p>WINDOWS XP Microsoft Windows XP Editions</p> <p>WINDOWS SERVER 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service pack 1</p> <p>WINDOWS SERVER 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* * Core Editions not supported. * Contact your software provider prior to installing the software on Windows 2008 Web Server.</p>
PERIPHERALS	DVD-ROM drive Network Interface Card (with TCP/IP Services Configured)
DISPLAY	Any mode other than VGA
MISCELLANEOUS	<p>Microsoft® SQL Server 2008 Express Edition Service Pack 1.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SQL Server 2008 database instance with the appropriate service pack will be automatically installed during the installation. <p>Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) versions 5.01, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For all Microsoft Windows 2003 platforms, Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) is automatically installed with the operating system.
	<p>The software can function with JRE version 1.6.x or higher.</p> <p>If a JRE version 1.6.0_06 or higher is available, the software will use the existing JRE software.</p> <p>If JRE version 1.6.0_05 or lower is available, or no JRE version is available at all, you will be prompted to install JRE version 1.6.0_16</p> <p>You can run CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application without installing the software provided IIS is installed and running on the CommServe computer (or CommCell Console and IIS are running on an alternate computer). However, you must manually install JRE in this case. When running the applet Java™ Runtime Environment (JRE) SE v1.6.0_06 is recommended - can be installed from the software installation disc.</p>
NOTES ON COMMSERVE INSTALLATION	<p>The software should not be installed on a compressed drive.</p> <p>The computer must have a static IP address. This version of the software does not support Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).</p>

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - MediaAgent

The following requirements are for the MediaAgent:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1 64-bit	RS/6000 43P Model 150 - 375 MHZ or higher; Dual Processors recommended
	AIX 5.3 64-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	RS/6000 43P Model 150 - 375 MHZ or higher; Dual Processors recommended
	AIX 5.3 32-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	RS/6000 43P Model 150 - 375 MHZ or higher; Dual Processors recommended
	Note that all AIX platforms support Logical Partitions (LPAR).	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31) 64-bit	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31) 64-bit	HP-UX -PA RISC 300 MHZ or higher; Dual Processors recommended
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) 64-bit	HP-UX -PA RISC 300 MHZ or higher; Dual Processors recommended
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) 64-bit	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 64-bit with a minimum of OS patch level of December 2008 patch bundle or higher (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	HP-UX -PA RISC 300 MHZ or higher; Dual Processors recommended
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 32-bit with a minimum of OS patch level of December 2008 patch bundle or higher (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	HP-UX -PA RISC 300 MHZ or higher; Dual Processors recommended
LINUX	ORACLE LINUX	
	Oracle Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	RED FLAG LINUX	
	Red Flag Linux AS 4.1 32-bit with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible 650 MHz processor minimum recommended; Dual 1 GHz or higher processors recommended
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX AS/ES	
	Red Hat Linux AS 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible 650 MHz processor minimum recommended; Dual 1 GHz or higher processors recommended
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x	Itanium
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 5.x with glibc 2.5	x64
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Server 5 with glibc 2.5.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium or compatible 650 MHz processor minimum recommended; Dual 1 GHz or higher processors recommended
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x	Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	x64
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Itanium
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium or compatible 650 MHz processor minimum recommended; Dual 1 GHz or higher processors recommended
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.11.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible 650 MHz processor minimum recommended; Dual 1 GHz or higher processors recommended
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x	Itanium
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x	x64
UBUNTU		
	Ubuntu 10.04 LTS	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 9 4/04 64-bit	Ultra5 station or higher; Dual Processors recommended
	Solaris 9 4/04 32-bit	Ultra5 station or higher; Dual Processors recommended
	Solaris 11.x	x64
	Solaris 11.x	Ultra5 station or higher; Dual Processors recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Ultra5 station or higher; Dual Processors recommended
	Solaris 10.x 64-bit	x64
TRU64	Tru64 OSF1 Release 5.1B-3	Compaq® (DEC) AlphaServer DS Series computer or higher recommended
WINDOWS WINDOWS 2012		
	Microsoft Windows Server 2012 Editions See Considerations for Microsoft Windows Server 2012, 2012 R2, and Windows 8 for more information.	All Windows-compatible processors supported
WINDOWS 8		
	Microsoft Windows 8 Editions* *Tape Libraries/Drives are not supported. See Considerations for Microsoft Windows Server 2012, 2012 R2, and Windows 8 for more information.	All Windows-compatible processors supported
WINDOWS 7		
	Microsoft Windows 7 Editions* *Tape Libraries/Drives are not supported.	All Windows-compatible processors supported
WINDOWS 2008		
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* *Web Server Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported
WINDOWS VISTA		
	Microsoft Windows Vista Editions* *Tape Libraries/Drives are not supported.	All Windows-compatible processors supported
WINDOWS 2003		
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions** with a minimum of Service Pack 1 (as guest OS/virtual machine) on VMware GSX and ESX **On VMware virtual machines, Hyper-V virtual machines, and Hyper-V R2 Core machines, Disk Library configuration is supported.	All Windows-compatible processors supported
WINDOWS XP		
	Microsoft Windows XP Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 3	All Windows-compatible processors supported

*Tape Libraries/Drives are not supported.

HARD DRIVE

WINDOWS

130 MB for the MediaAgent software and log file growth/ 298 MB recommended

Enough additional local disk space to accommodate the index cache (with a minimum of 256 MB). It is recommended that the index cache is configured to be written on a partitioned drive, used exclusively for holding index cache. For information on calculating the space requirements for index cache, see Calculating the Storage Space Required for the Index Cache Directory.

An undersized index cache can result in degraded backup and restore performance. A severely undersized index cache can render backups and restores on that MediaAgent inoperable.

732 MB of free disk space on the drive in which the Operating System and `temp` directory resides, to copy temporary files during the install or upgrade process.

UNIX

256 MB for the MediaAgent software and log file growth

MEMORY

4 GB RAM minimum required; 32 GB RAM recommended if MediaAgent is used with Deduplication. For granular details on MediaAgent sizing, refer to the Deduplication Building Block Guide.

Virtual memory should be set to twice the amount of available physical memory.

A MediaAgent that is also a Catalog Server requires an additional hard disk space of 4% of the total data protected by all MediaAgents using the Catalog Server.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

SCSI bus adapter for each attached media library

Sufficient hard disk space when backing up to disk drives

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Media library or stand-alone drive attached to local SCSI adapter(s), backup device available through Storage Area Network (SAN), or magnetic disk partitions for backup data.

Contact your software provider, for a list of supported storage devices (libraries, drives, media and SAN devices) and compatible SCSI cards.

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

DRIVERS

Drivers for SCSI Adapters (Supplied by your SCSI Adapter provider)

Drivers for media drives (Supplied by your media drive provider)

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<p><directory>/<file_name>.te</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

NOTES ON MEDIAAGENT INSTALLATION

The MediaAgent should not be installed on a compressed drive.

On Unix 64-bit computers, you can opt to install either the 32-bit version or 64-bit version of the agent. See Install the MediaAgent or Linux File System Deployment to run the appropriate install.

For information on installing the MediaAgent software on the Microsoft Virtual Server, see Considerations for backing up the Microsoft Virtual Server.

(If CommServe, MediaAgent and Client software are installed on the same computer.)

Contact your software provider, for a list of supported storage devices (libraries, drives, media and SAN devices) and compatible SCSI cards.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - CommCell Console

Stand Alone Application Remote Web Based Features

The following requirements are for the CommCell Console as a Stand-Alone Application:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
LINUX	DEBIAN	
	Debian 5.x with glibc 2.7.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	FEDORA	
	Fedora release 8 with glibc 2.7.x	Intel Pentium or x64 processors
	RED FLAG LINUX	
	Red Flag Linux AS 5.0 64-bit with glibc 2.3.x	x64
	Red Flag Linux AS 4.1 32-bit with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX AS/ES	
	Red Hat Linux AS 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Server 5.1 with glibc 2.5.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with glibc-2.4.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	UBUNTU	
	Ubuntu 8.04	Intel Pentium or x64 processors
MAC OS X SERVER	Mac OS X v10.4.8	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.4.7	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.4.6	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.4.5	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.4.4	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.4.3	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.4.2	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.4.1	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X Server v10.4.8	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X Server v10.4.7	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X Server v10.4.6	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table

Mac OS X Server v10.4.5	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
Mac OS X Server v10.4.4	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
Mac OS X Server v10.4.3	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
Mac OS X Server v10.4.2	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
Mac OS X Server v10.4.1	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
Mac OS X Server v10.4.0	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table

WINDOWS WINDOWS 8

Microsoft Windows 8 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

WINDOWS 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
---------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

WINDOWS 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
-------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

WINDOWS VISTA

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
-------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

WINDOWS 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 3	All Windows-compatible processors supported
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

HARD DRIVE

65 MB free disk space

763 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

DISPLAY

The minimum resolution required to properly display the CommCell Console is 1280x1024.

The graphical icons in the CommCell Console cannot be displayed in VGA mode. This affects the appearance of the toolbar and the CommCell tree in the CommCell Browser. Also, some table of contents is not displayed correctly.

MISCELLANEOUS**NETWORK**

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The CommCell Console supports Internet Protocol versions 4 and 6 (IPv4 and IPv6). See Internet Protocols for more information.

INTERNET EXPLORER

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) version 8.0, 9.0

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<p><directory>/<file_name>.te</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

JAVA SUPPORT

The software supports Java 7 or higher*.

Java 7 versions are supported with Calypso Service Pack 8 or higher. Previous service pack versions do not fully support this version.

If a JRE version 1.7.0_17 or higher is available, the software will use the existing JRE software.

If a JRE version lower than 1.7.0_17 is available, or no JRE version is available at all, you will be prompted to install JRE version 1.7.0_17

*The Backup Time selection in the Advanced Options area of the Find dialog box is not compatible with Java 7 or higher.

IIS

IIS must be installed on the CommServe computer to remotely access the CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application.

If an alternate computer is used as the IIS server, the alternate computer must:

- be in the same domain as the CommServe.
- have the CommCell Console installed.

See Web Administration for more information.

If the CommCell Console software is going to be installed on a computer running IIS version 7.0 and 7.5, the following software components must be installed and configured along with all default components on the computer prior to the CommCell Console installation:

- ASP
- CGI
- ISAPI Extensions
- IIS 6 Management Capability

Note that on Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008 computers, these components will be automatically installed if not already installed on the computer.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - CommCell Console

Stand Alone Application

Remote Web Based Application

The following requirements are for the CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application:

OPERATING SYSTEM

The CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application is supported on any operating system running a supported Java-enabled web browser.

SUPPORTED WEB BROWSERS

LINUX

Mozilla 1.x

Netscape 6.2

MACINTOSH

Mozilla Firefox v2.0.0.3

Safari v2.0.4

SOLARIS

Netscape 6.2

WINDOWS

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) versions 5.01, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0, 9.0

Mozilla Firefox v2.0.0.3

DISPLAY

The minimum resolution required to properly display the CommCell Console is 1280x1024.

The graphical icons in the CommCell Console cannot be displayed in VGA mode. This affects the appearance of the toolbar and the CommCell tree in the CommCell Browser. Also, some table of contents is not displayed correctly.

MISCELLANEOUS

The CommCell Console supports Internet Protocol versions 4 and 6 (IPv4 and IPv6). See Internet Protocols for more information.

IIS

IIS must be installed on the CommServe computer to remotely access the CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application.

If an alternate computer is used as the IIS server, the alternate computer must:

- be in the same domain as the CommServe.
- have the CommCell Console installed.

See Web Administration for more information.

JAVA SUPPORT

The software supports Java 7 or higher*.

Java 7 versions are supported with Calypso Service Pack 8 or higher. Previous service pack versions do not fully support this version.

If a JRE version 1.7.0_17 or higher is available, the software will use the existing JRE software.

If a JRE version lower than 1.7.0_17 is available, or no JRE version is available at all, you will be prompted to install JRE version 1.7.0_17

*The Backup Time selection in the Advanced Options area of the Find dialog box is not compatible with Java 7 or higher.

Consider the following:

- On Internet Explorer (IE), the security level should be set to **Medium-low** for the download to be successful. To adjust the security of the browser, access the **Security** tab under **Internet Options**.
- Java plug-in is not supported on Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 editions. To run CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application, you need to install 32-bit JRE on 64-bit machines.

- To run the CommCell Console on MAC OS X 10.5 or higher, JRE version must be 1.6.0_16 or higher is required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Active Directory *iDataAgent*

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Active Directory *iDataAgent*:

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2012

Microsoft Windows Server 2012 Editions
Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

HARD DRIVE

1 GB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SERVICES

It is recommended that your Active Directory server has DNS services configured.

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System *iDataAgent*, refer to System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - DB2 *i*DataAgent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the DB2 *i*DataAgent:

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
DB2 10.5 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 64-BIT ON:		
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xI.C.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 with glibc 2.12.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.6.x	x64
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	x64
Z-LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x	s390x 64-bit
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 10.x Enterprise Server	s390x 64-bit
SOLARIS	Solaris 11.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
WINDOWS SERVER 2008	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2 All Windows-compatible processors supported	
DB2 10.5 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 32-BIT ON:		
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.6.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
DB2 10.1 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 64-BIT ON:		

AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xI.C.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	x64
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	x64
Z-LINUX	Red Hat Enterprise 5.x/6.x	s390x 64-bit
SOLARIS	Solaris 11.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
DB2 9.7 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 64-BIT ON:		
AIX	AIX 7.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xI.C.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 with glibc 2.12.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.6.x	x64
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	x64
Z-LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x	s390x 64-bit
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 10.x Enterprise Server	s390x 64-bit
SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 11.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	x64

WINDOWS WINDOWS 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

All Windows-compatible processors supported

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2 All Windows-compatible processors supported

DB2 9.7 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 32-BIT ON:**LINUX RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX**

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 with glibc 2.12.x

Intel Pentium or compatible processors

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.6.x

Intel Pentium or compatible processors

SUSE LINUX (SLES)

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above

Intel Pentium or compatible processors

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

Intel Pentium or compatible processors

WINDOWS WINDOWS 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*

Intel Pentium or compatible processors

*Core Editions not supported

DB2 9.5 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 64-BIT ON:**AIX** AIX 7.1 64-bit

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

AIX 6.1

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xIc.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

HP-UX HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

Itanium

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

PA-RISC

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

Itanium

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

PA-RISC

LINUX RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 with glibc 2.12.x

x64

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.6.x

x64

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x

x64

SUSE LINUX (SLES)

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above

x64

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

x64

Z-LINUX RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x

s390x 64-bit

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x

s390x 64-bit

SUSE LINUX (SLES)

SuSE Linux 10.x Enterprise Server

s390x 64-bit

SOLARIS Solaris 9

Sparc5 or higher recommended

Solaris 11.x

x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)

Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14

Sparc5 or higher recommended

Solaris 10.x

x64

WINDOWS WINDOWS 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

All Windows-compatible processors supported

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 All Windows-compatible processors supported

DB2 9.5 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 32-BIT ON:**LINUX RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX**

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 with glibc 2.12.x

Intel Pentium or compatible processors

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.6.x

Intel Pentium or compatible processors

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x

Intel Pentium or compatible processors

SUSE LINUX (SLES)

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above

Intel Pentium or compatible processors

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

Intel Pentium or compatible processors

WINDOWS WINDOWS 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*

All Windows-compatible processors supported

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2 All Windows-compatible processors supported

DB2 9.1 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 64-BIT ON:**AIX** AIX 7.1 64-bit

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

AIX 6.1 64-bit

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xI.C.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

HP-UX HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

Itanium

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

PA-RISC

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

PA-RISC

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

Itanium

LINUX RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 with glibc 2.12.x

x64

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.6.x

x64

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x

x64

SUSE LINUX (SLES)

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above

x64

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

x64

Z-LINUX RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x

s390x 64-bit

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x

s390x 64-bit

SUSE LINUX (SLES)

SuSE Linux 10.x Enterprise Server

s390x 64-bit

SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 11.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	x64

WINDOWS WINDOWS 2008

	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported
--	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

WINDOWS 2003

	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
--	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

DB2 9.1 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 32-BIT ON:

AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xIc.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11)	Itanium

LINUX RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX

	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.6.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors

SUSE LINUX (SLES)

	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors

SOLARIS	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
----------------	--------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------

WINDOWS WINDOWS 2008

	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions* *Core Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported
--	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

WINDOWS 2003

	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
--	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

DB2 8.2 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 64-BIT ON:

AIX	AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xIc.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC

LINUX RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX

	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	x64
SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 All Windows-compatible processors supported	

DB2 8.2 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 32-BIT ON:

AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11)	PA-RISC
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack All Windows-compatible processors supported 1	

DB2 8.1 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 64-BIT ON:

AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11)	PA-RISC
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 All Windows-compatible processors supported	

DB2 8.1 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 32-BIT ON:

AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack All Windows-compatible processors supported	

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

WINDOWS

888 MB on Calypso install path including Job Results and Log files

88 MB on Job Results

23.5 MB on Log File path (without debug)

LINUX

568 MB on Calypso install path including Log Files and excluding Job Results

1 MB on Calypso Job Results.

34 MB on Log Files (without debug)

AIX

2228.30 MB on Calypso install path including Job Results

1.97 MB on Job Results

906.10 MB on Log location with debug

MEMORY

WINDOWS

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

AIX, HP-UX, LINUX AND SOLARIS

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System *iDataAgents*, refer to:

- System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - AIX File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - HP-UX File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - Linux File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - Solaris File System *iDataAgent*

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level software` option selected.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<p><directory>/<file_name>.te</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

On Linux, if you have installed libstdc++.so.6, make sure to install the compat-stdlibc++ rpm containing libstdc++.so.5 also.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - DB2 DPF *i*DataAgents

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the DB2 DPF *i*DataAgent:

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
DB2 9.7 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 64-BIT ON:		
AIX	AIX 7.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	x64
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	x64
SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 11.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	x64
DB2 9.7 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 32-BIT ON:		
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
DB2 9.5 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 64-BIT ON:		
AIX	AIX 7.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC

	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	x64
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	x64
SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 11.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	x64

DB2 9.5 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 32-BIT ON:

LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors

DB2 9.1 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 64-BIT ON:

AIX	AIX 7.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xIc.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5 with glibc 2.6.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	x64
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	x64
SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 11.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended

Solaris 10.x

x64

DB2 9.1 UNIVERSAL DATABASE 32-BIT ON:

AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11)	PA-RISC
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended

HARD DRIVE

See System Requirements - DB2 iDataAgent

MEMORY

See System Requirements - DB2 iDataAgent

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS**NETWORK**

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<p><directory>/<file_name>.te</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Documentum *iDataAgent*

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Documentum *iDataAgent*:

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
DOCUMENTUM 6.5 SP1/HIGHER ON:		
AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.2 with glibc 2.5.x	Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10 SP2 Enterprise Server	Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
WINDOWS SERVER 2003	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2	All Windows-compatible processors supported
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	*Core Editions not supported	

HARD DRIVE

230 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

MEMORY

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

SUPPORTED DATABASES

ORACLE

Oracle 10g R2 (10.2.x)

Oracle 11g R1

Oracle 11g R2 (supported since Documentum 6.7)

See System Requirements - Oracle *iDataAgent* for more information on the supported versions listed above.

DB2

DB2 9.5 Universal Database

See System Requirements - DB2 *iDataAgent* for more information on the supported version listed above.

SQL

MS SQL 2005 SP3

See System Requirements - Microsoft SQL Server *iDataAgent* for more information on the supported version listed above.

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

Data Protection of data residing on global and non-global zones is supported.

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgents, refer to:

- System Requirements - AIX File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - HP-UX File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Linux File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Solaris File System iDataAgent

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<p><directory>/<file_name>.te</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</pre> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - External Data Connector

NetBackup	Tivoli Storage Manager	EMC Networker	Supported Features
-----------	------------------------	---------------	--------------------

The following requirements are for External Data Connector:

NETBACKUP

After the discovery process is complete, NetBackup components, such as client computers, backup schedules, and media are mapped to the appropriate CommCell entity. The following versions of NetBackup are supported for these NetBackup component groupings:

NETBACKUP GROUPING	DESCRIPTION	SUPPORTED NETBACKUP VERSIONS*
Configuration	Clients, Policy Types, Policies, Policy Attributes (compression, encryption), Policy Schedules (frequency, calendar), Backup Types, Media Server.	5.1, 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.1
Jobs	Backup and Admin Policy Job information is migrated for CommCell reporting purposes.	6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.1
Media	Lifecycle Policies, Storage Units, Robots, and Media Status are migrated for CommCell reporting purposes.	6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.1

*Both Windows and Unix platforms are supported.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Image Level iDataAgent

[System Requirements](#) | [Snapshot Support](#) | [Supported Features](#)

The following requirements are for the Image Level iDataAgent:

If using this Agent with a snapshot engine, refer to System Requirements-Image Level iDataAgent - Snapshots Support information on the operating system vendors supported for each snapshot engine with this Agent.

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
AIX	AIX 7.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
LINUX	DEBIAN	
	Debian 5.x with kernel 2.6.26-2	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Debian 5.x with kernel 2.6.26.19-2	x64
	Debian 4.x with kernel 2.6.18-686	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Debian 4.x with kernel 2.6.18-6	x64
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-89 (Update 8)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-89 (Update 8)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-67 (Update 6)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-67 (Update 6)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.32-71	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.32-71	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.32-279 (Update 3)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.32-279 (Update 3)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.32-220 (Update 2)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.32-220 (Update 2)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-308 (Update 8)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-308 (Update 8)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

	8)	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-274 (Update 7)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-274 (Update 7)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-238 (Update 6)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-238 (Update 6)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-194 (Update 5)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-194 (Update 5)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-164 (Update 4)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-164 (Update 4)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
SUSE LINUX (SLES)		
	SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.32.12-0.7 (Update 1)	x64
	SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.32.12-0.7 (Update 1)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.27.19-5	x64
	SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.27.19-5	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.54.5 (Update 3)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.54.5 (Update 3)	x64
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.21 (Update 2)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.21 (Update 2)	x64
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.46-0.12 (Update 1)	x64
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.46-0.12 (Update 1)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
SOLARIS	Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS VISTA	
	Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS XP	
	Microsoft Windows XP Professional Edition 32-bit with a minimum of Service Pack 3	All Windows-compatible processors supported
WINDOWS SERVER 2003	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2	All Windows-compatible processors supported

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

WINDOWS

115 MB minimum of hard drive space for software/ 499 MB recommended
100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth
727 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

UNIX

235 MB minimum of hard drive space for software

MEMORY

WINDOWS

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

AIX, LINUX, AND SOLARIS

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgents, refer to:

- System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - AIX File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Linux File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Solaris File System iDataAgent

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user level software` option selected.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<p><directory>/<file_name>.te</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</pre> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Informix *i*DataAgent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Informix *i*DataAgent:

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
INFORMIX 11.70 FCX ON:		
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch level of December 2008 patch bundle or higher (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	Itanium
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x *For INFORMIX IDS 11.5, the FC(4) or higher version is the prerequisite.	Intel Pentium, Itanium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, Itanium or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above *For INFORMIX IDS 11.5, the FC(4) or higher version is the prerequisite.	Intel Pentium, Itanium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
INFORMIX 11.70 UCX ON:		
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xIc.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SOLARIS	Solaris 9
INFORMIX 11.70 HCX ON:		
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch level of December 2008 patch bundle or higher (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC

INFORMIX 11.50 FCX ON:

AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xI.C.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) 64-bit	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch level of December 2008 patch bundle or higher (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC

LINUX RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS

	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Itanium, x64 or compatible processors

SUSE LINUX (SLES)

	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Itanium, x64 or compatible processors

SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended

INFORMIX 11.50 UCX ON:

AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

LINUX RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS

	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
--	-------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

SUSE LINUX (SLES)

	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
--	----------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

SOLARIS	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
----------------	--------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------

INFORMIX 11.50 HCX ON:

AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch level of December 2008 patch bundle or higher (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC

INFORMIX XPS 8.51 FCX ON:

	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
--	---------	----------------------------------

AIX		
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 64-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
LINUX RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX		
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	x64
SOLARIS		
	Solaris 11.x	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

95 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

Data Protection of data residing on global and non-global zones is supported.

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgents, refer to:

- System Requirements - AIX File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - HP-UX File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Linux File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Solaris File System iDataAgent

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level software` option selected.

SUPPORTED LIBRARIES FOR CENTOS V5.7 (OR HIGHER)

You should use the latest library versions for CentOS 5.7 (or higher) as the library provided by Calypso may not be the latest. Informix programs may require

the latest library versions. If not used, the Informix instance configuration will fail with errors such as showing the server status as UNKNOWN.

To use the latest libraries, rename the `libgcc_s.so.1` library located in the `Software_Installation_Directory>/Base` folder to a different name. This will allow Informix programs to load libraries available from the system.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Lotus Notes/Domino Server Database iDataAgent

Lotus Notes Database iDataAgent	Lotus Notes Document iDataAgent	Supported Features
---------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------

The Lotus Notes/Domino Server iDataAgents support the following Lotus Domino Server releases in both Domino Cluster and non-Domino Cluster environments.

If you are running a Lotus Domino Server in a Domino Cluster, special restore considerations apply. See Restore Considerations for this Agent in Restore Data - Lotus Notes/Domino Server for more information.

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
LOTUS DOMINO SERVER RELEASE 8.02 32-BIT ON:		
AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	UltraSPARC III and higher recommended
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	* Special configuration considerations apply. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for more information.	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
LOTUS DOMINO SERVER RELEASE 8.02 64-BIT ON:		
AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
LOTUS DOMINO SERVER RELEASE 8.5.X 32-BIT ON:		
AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	UltraSPARC III and higher recommended

WINDOWS WINDOWS 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* All Windows-compatible processors supported
 *Core Editions not supported
 * Special configuration considerations apply. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for more information.

WINDOWS 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2 All Windows-compatible processors supported

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2 All Windows-compatible processors supported

LOTUS DOMINO SERVER RELEASE 8.5.X 64-BIT ON:

AIX AIX 6.1 Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

AIX 5.3 with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

WINDOWS WINDOWS 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* All Windows-compatible processors supported
 *Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2 All Windows-compatible processors supported

HARD DRIVE

1.5 GB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

MEMORY**AIX****WINDOWS**

2 GB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

WINDOWS

2 GB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgents, refer to:

- System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - AIX File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Linux File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Solaris File System iDataAgent

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<p><directory>/<file_name>.te</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

NOTES ON DOMINO CLUSTER INSTALLATIONS

For Lotus Notes iDataAgent to work on Domino cluster, the following requirements have to be met:

1. All Domino servers that are part of Domino Cluster must be installed on Different physical machines.
2. Multiple Domino partitions must be running on the same client machine, however binding to different IP addresses on a single NIC card.
3. Multiple Domino partitions must be running on the same client machine, however binding to different IP addresses on multiple NIC cards.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Lotus Notes/Domino Server Document iDataAgent

Lotus Notes Database iDataAgent	Lotus Notes Document iDataAgent	Supported Features
---------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------

The Lotus Notes/Domino Server iDataAgents support the following Lotus Domino Server releases in both Domino Cluster and non-Domino Cluster environments.

If you are running a Lotus Domino Server in a Domino Cluster, special restore considerations apply. See [Restore Considerations for this Agent in Restore Data - Lotus Notes/Domino Server](#) for more information.

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM

PROCESSOR

LOTUS DOMINO SERVER RELEASE 8.02 32-BIT ON:

AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	UltraSPARC III and higher recommended
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	* Special configuration considerations apply. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for more information.	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported

LOTUS DOMINO SERVER RELEASE 8.02 64-BIT ON:

AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported

LOTUS DOMINO SERVER RELEASE 8.5.X 32-BIT ON:

AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	UltraSPARC III and higher recommended

WINDOWS WINDOWS 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* All Windows-compatible processors supported
 *Core Editions not supported
 * Special configuration considerations apply. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for more information.

WINDOWS 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2 All Windows-compatible processors supported

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2 All Windows-compatible processors supported

LOTUS DOMINO SERVER RELEASE 8.5.X 64-BIT ON:

AIX AIX 6.1 Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

AIX 5.3 with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

WINDOWS WINDOWS 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* All Windows-compatible processors supported
 *Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2 All Windows-compatible processors supported

HARD DRIVE

1.5 GB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

MEMORY**AIX****WINDOWS**

2 GB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

WINDOWS

2 GB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgents, refer to:

- System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - AIX File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Linux File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Solaris File System iDataAgent

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

DAOS

The Lotus Notes Document iDataAgent does not support Domino Attachment and Object Service (DAOS).

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Macintosh File System *iDataAgent*

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Macintosh File System *iDataAgent*:

OPERATING SYSTEM

MAC OS X

Mac OS X v10.4.x
Mac OS X v10.5.x
Mac OS X v10.6.x
Mac OS X v10.7.x
Mac OS X v10.8.x

HARD DRIVE

95 MB minimum of hard disk space for software
50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth
10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides).

MEMORY

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications
Swap space = 2*RAM size

PROCESSOR

Intel-based Macintosh computers

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Microsoft Data Protection Manager

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Microsoft Data Protection Manager *iDataAgent*:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Data Protection Manager Server 2006 Editions up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft Data Protection Manager Server 2007 Editions up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft Data Protection Manager Server 2010 Editions up to the latest Service Pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

HARD DRIVE

111 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

727 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

When you select the Microsoft Data Protection Manager *iDataAgent* for installation, the appropriate Windows File System *iDataAgent* and the SQL Server *iDataAgent* are automatically selected. The Windows File System *iDataAgent* is mandatory, however, the SQL Server *iDataAgent* is optional. It is recommended that you install the SQL Server *iDataAgent* to fully protect the Data Protection Manager database for disaster recovery purposes.

For System Requirements and install information specific to these agents, refer to:

- System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - Microsoft SQL Server *iDataAgent*

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System

Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Exchange Database *iDataAgent*

System Requirements | **Supported Features**

The following requirements are for the Microsoft Exchange Database *iDataAgent*:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2010 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2013 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2012

Microsoft Windows Server 2012 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

SUPPORTED COMPONENTS

EXCHANGE OFFLINE MINING TOOL

The Exchange Offline Mining Tool is supported on any Windows Server platform.

NOTES ON EXCHANGE OFFLINE MINING TOOL INSTALLATION

The following additional software packages must be installed on the same computer where the Exchange Offline Mining Tool is installed, if they are not already present on the computer:

- .NET Framework 4.0 (will be automatically installed during Offline Mining Tool installation, if needed)
- Microsoft Outlook 2003 (or later)
- For Exchange Server 2010 Editions, the Exchange Offline Mining Tool is supported only with 32-bit versions of Outlook.
- For Exchange Server 2013, the Exchange Offline Mining Tool is supported only with 32-bit versions of Outlook.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System *iDataAgent*, refer to System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Microsoft Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2010 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

SUPPORTED COMPONENTS

OWA PROXY ENABLER

The OWA Proxy Enabler is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT

The Outlook Add-In Client is supported with Microsoft Outlook 2003 or higher.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System *i*DataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System *i*DataAgent, refer to System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *i*DataAgent.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NOTES ON MICROSOFT EXCHANGE SERVER /DATAAGENT INSTALLATION

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server Agents are 32-bit MAPI-based Agents installed on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for information on installation and configuration requirements for these Agents.

- The Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 Mailbox and Public Folder-based Agents can be installed in two ways:
 - directly on the Microsoft Exchange Server computer
 - as Proxy Agents on a separate computer running a supported 32-bit operating system

NOTES ON OUTLOOK OWA PROXY ENABLER INSTALLATION

Prior to configuring Web Access for Exchange 2007 Mailbox/Public Folder Archiver, Exchange WebProxy Archiver Agent, or OWA Proxy Enabler, ensure that the Client Access Role has been configured on the Exchange Server.

NOTES ON OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT INSTALLATION

For Windows clients, JRE 1.7.0_17 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

.NET Framework is needed to support RPC over HTTP connection mode, as well as support for the Exchange Offline Mining Tool. It is not automatically installed by the MSI package and must be manually installed.

Update 331320 must be installed on the client in order to use RPC over HTTP. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 331320 to obtain this patch.

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Exchange Public Folder *iDataAgent*

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Microsoft Exchange Public Folder *iDataAgent*:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Exchange 2003 Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2007 Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2010 Server up to the latest service pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

SUPPORTED COMPONENTS

OWA PROXY ENABLER

The OWA Proxy Enabler is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT

The Outlook Add-In Client is supported with Microsoft Outlook 2003 or higher.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System *iDataAgent*, refer to System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

NOTES ON OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT INSTALLATION

For Windows clients, JRE 1.7.0_17 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

.NET Framework is needed to support RPC over HTTP connection mode, as well as support for the Exchange Offline Mining Tool. It is not automatically installed by the MSI package and must be manually installed.

Update 331320 must be installed on the client in order to use RPC over HTTP. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 331320 to obtain this patch.

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

NOTES ON OUTLOOK OWA PROXY ENABLER INSTALLATION

Prior to configuring Web Access for Exchange 2007 Mailbox/Public Folder Archiver, Exchange WebProxy Archiver Agent, or OWA Proxy Enabler, ensure that the Client Access Role has been configured on the Exchange Server.

NOTES ON MICROSOFT EXCHANGE SERVER /DATAAGENT INSTALLATION

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server Agents are 32-bit MAPI-based Agents installed on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for information on installation and configuration requirements for these Agents.

- The Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 Mailbox and Public Folder-based Agents can be installed in two ways:
 - directly on the Microsoft Exchange Server computer
 - as Proxy Agents on a separate computer running a supported 32-bit operating system

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Microsoft SharePoint Server *iDataAgent*

System Requirements | **Supported Features**

The following requirements are for the SharePoint Server *iDataAgent*:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services version 2.0 up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft SharePoint Portal 2003 Server up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services version 3.0 up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft Office Forms Server 2007 up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft Office Project Server 2007 up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft Search Server 2008 up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft Search Server 2008 Express up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010
Microsoft FAST Search Server 2010
Microsoft Search Server 2010
Microsoft Office Project Server 2010
Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Standard and Enterprise
Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2010
Microsoft Search Server 2010 Express

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1

* Special configuration considerations apply. See [Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform](#) for more information.

HARD DRIVE

708 MB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

500 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

An appropriate amount of temporary space must be allotted in the Job Results folder to accommodate staging of the SharePoint Service Application Databases, Site Collections and subsites. Calculated based on the size of the largest Service Application Database, 5 largest site collections and 5 largest subsites in the Farm.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System *iDataAgent*, refer to System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

SQL 2005 SDK

SQL 2005 SDK is required to be installed where SharePoint agent is installed.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Microsoft SQL Server *iDataAgent*

System Requirements | **Supported Features**

The following requirements are for the Microsoft SQL Server *iDataAgent*:

APPLICATION

Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Editions up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Editions up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Editions up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Editions*

*See Considerations for SQL Server 2012.

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2012

Microsoft Windows Server 2012 Editions

WINDOWS 7

Microsoft Windows 7 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1*
* Core Editions not supported.

WINDOWS VISTA

Microsoft Windows Vista Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 3

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

265 MB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth.

724 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

NOTES ON MICROSOFT SQL SERVER /DATAAGENT INSTALLATION

- The File System /DataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System /DataAgent, refer to System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System /DataAgent.
- If the option to install SQL Server is disabled make sure there is at least one network protocol enabled. For SQL 2005 go to SQL Server Configuration Manager and enable protocols for each instance.
- Microsoft SQL Server Management Objects (SMO) is required on the client machine. By default, SMO is automatically installed with SQL Server 2005 or later versions.

NOTES ON ALWAYSON PROVIDED BY SQL 2012

SQL Server 2012 comes with a new implementation on clusters named AlwaysOn. If you want to protect the AlwaysOn configuration, consider the following:

- Install the SQL /DataAgent on all physical nodes of the cluster to protect the SQL instances separately. Note that if the active node, which is part of the Availability Group, performs a successful backup then target databases synchronizing with the active node may have errors during backup.
- If you want to restore any databases that are part of the Availability Group, you must remove the database from the Availability Group. Once the restore completes, you can add the database back.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*:

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS 8

Microsoft Windows Client 8
Microsoft Windows Client 8.1

See Considerations for Microsoft Windows Server 2012, 2012 R2, and Windows 8 for more information.

WINDOWS SERVER 2012

Microsoft Windows Server 2012 Editions
Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 Editions

See Considerations for Microsoft Windows Server 2012, 2012 R2, and Windows 8 for more information.

WINDOWS 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions
Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

WINDOWS VISTA

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1

* Special configuration considerations apply. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for more information.

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Home Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 3
Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 3

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1.3 GB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 1.5 GB recommended
1 GB of additional hard disk space for log file growth
725 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive
Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - MySQL iDataAgent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the MySQL iDataAgent:

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
MYSQL COMMUNITY SERVER EDITION OR ENTERPRISE, STANDARD OR CLASSIC EDITION - 5.0.26 AND HIGHER, 5.1.X, 5.5.X AND 5.6.X ON:		
AIX	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xIc.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
FREEBSD	FreeBSD 8.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
LINUX	DEBIAN	
	Debian 6.x with glibc 2.11.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Debian 5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	GENTOO	
	Gentoo release 10.1 with glibc 2.6.x	Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	OPENSUSE	
	OpenSuSE 12.1 with glibc 2.14.x	x64
	OpenSuSE 11.1 with glibc 2.9.x	Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
SOURCE MAGE LINUX		
Source Mage Linux	Itanium, x64 or compatible processors	
SUSE LINUX (SLES)		
SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors	
SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors	
UBUNTU		
Ubuntu 9.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors	
Ubuntu 8.04	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors	
Ubuntu 12.04 LTS	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors	
Ubuntu 10.04 LTS	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors	
SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 11.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	x64
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

All Windows-compatible processors supported

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

All Windows-compatible processors supported

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

220 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

725 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides).

MEMORY

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

Data Protection of data residing on global and non-global zones is supported.

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System *iDataAgents*, refer to:

- System Requirements - AIX File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - HP-UX File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - Linux File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - Solaris File System *iDataAgent*

On Ubuntu 9.x 64-bit computers, it is required that you install the libstdc++5 compatibility package. To install the package, use the following command:

```
[root]# sudo apt-get install libstdc++5
```

On Ubuntu and Debian computers, it is recommended that you install the latest packages for the operating system before installing the *iDataAgent*. To install the latest packages, use the following command:

```
[root]# apt-get upgrade
```

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows:
where:	<code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code>

<p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>#####</p> <p>where:</p> <p><name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name.</p> <p><version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</p> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - NAS *i*DataAgent

System Requirements	Supported Features	Supported Vendors
---------------------	--------------------	-------------------

The following requirements are for the NAS *i*DataAgent:

MEMORY AND HARD DISK

See System Requirements - MediaAgent

It is recommended that the MediaAgent computer also have additional physical memory available equaling 0.1% of the total backup size for the largest amount of data being backup up at any given time. (As an example, for 1 terabyte of backup data, you should have an additional 1 gigabyte of physical memory available.)

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

FILE SERVER

If media changers and/or tape drives are attached to the file server, all hardware (including the SAN networking hardware) must be of a type supported by the file server.

NAS CLIENTS

There is no separate software to install for the NAS Clients; all required components are installed automatically with the MediaAgent software. See System Requirements - MediaAgent for information on install information specific to the MediaAgent.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Novell Directory Services *iDataAgent*

System Requirements | **Supported Features**

The following requirements are for the Novell Directory Service *iDataAgent*:

The NetWare MediaAgent / *iDataAgents* are installed on a NetWare server using a Novell client computer, with Novell Client 4.91 SP4 on one of the following operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Editions
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions up with a minimum of Service Pack 2

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
OES LINUX	Novell OES2 Linux up to SP3 (SLES 10 SP4)	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Novell OES11 Linux up to SP1 (SLES 11 SP2)	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

Novell's Storage Management Service must be installed and configured in order to utilize the Target Service Agents.

You must have some form of name resolution between your CommServe, NetWare Server, and MediaAgent to ensure proper operations. It is recommended that your NetWare server has DNS services configured.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Novell GroupWise iDataAgent

[System Requirements](#) | [Supported Features](#)

The following requirements are for the Novell GroupWise iDataAgent:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
OES LINUX	GroupWise 8.0 up to SP3 HP3 on OES2 Linux up to SP3(SLES 10 SP4)	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	GroupWise 7 up to SP3 on OES2 Linux up to SP3(SLES 10 SP4)	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	GroupWise 2012 on OES11 Linux up to SP1 (SLES 11 SP2)*	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	*To secure GroupWise 2012 databases, use the OES File System iDataAgent.	

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

Novell's Storage Management Service must be installed and configured in order to utilize the Target Service Agents.

You must have some form of name resolution between your CommServe, NetWare Server, and MediaAgent to ensure proper operations. It is recommended that your NetWare server has DNS services configured.

BACKUP SUPPORT WITH GROUPWISE 2012

To secure GroupWise 2012 database residing on an NSS volume, use the OES File System iDataAgent, and to secure GroupWise 2012 database residing on a non-NSS volume use Linux File System iDataAgent.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - OES File System *iDataAgent*

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the OES File System *iDataAgent*:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
OES LINUX	Novell OES2 Linux up to SP3 (SLES 10 SP4)	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Novell OES11 Linux up to SP1 (SLES 11 SP2)	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Novell OES Linux up to Support Pack 2	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

95 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

725 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

Novell NetWare TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Novell's Storage Management Service must be installed and configured in order to utilize the Target Service Agents.

You must have some form of name resolution between your CommServe, OES Linux computer, and MediaAgent to ensure proper operations. It is recommended that your OES Linux computer has DNS services configured.

The OES File System *iDataAgent* should be used to protect the data on NSS volumes on an OES Linux computer. In order to protect the data on a POSIX File System, use the Linux File System *iDataAgent*.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Oracle iDataAgent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Oracle iDataAgent:

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
ORACLE 12C DATABASE (ENTERPRISE OR STANDARD EDITION) ON:		
LINUX	ORACLE LINUX	
	Oracle Linux 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	x64
	Oracle Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	x64
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	x64, Power PC or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	x64, Power PC or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 11.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
	Solaris 10.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1*	
	*Core Editions not supported	
ORACLE 10G/11G (R1, R2 OR HIGHER) DATABASES (ENTERPRISE OR STANDARD EDITION) ON:		
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
LINUX	ORACLE LINUX	
	Oracle Linux 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Oracle Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Oracle Linux 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	RED FLAG LINUX	
	Red Flag Linux 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System

p) or compatible processors

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors

Z-LINUX RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.x

s390x 64-bit

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x

s390x 64-bit

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x

s390x 64-bit

SUSE LINUX (SLES)

SuSE Linux 11.x Enterprise Server

s390x 64-bit

SuSE Linux 10.x Enterprise Server

s390x 64-bit

SOLARIS

Solaris 11.x

x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)

Solaris 10.x

x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)

WINDOWS WINDOWS 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1*

All Windows-compatible processors supported

*Core Editions not supported

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

All Windows-compatible processors supported

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY**WINDOWS**

32 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

AIX, HP-UX, LINUX, SOLARIS AND TRU64

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

EXPRESS DATABASE EDITION SUPPORT

Express Editions of Oracle 10g/11g (R2) Databases are supported on all operating systems supported by the Oracle application server.

ORACLE EXADATA DATABASE MACHINE SUPPORT

Oracle Exadata Database Machine is supported on the following Oracle Database versions:

- Oracle 11g (11.1.0.7)
- Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.1 or higher)

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

Data Protection of data residing on global and non-global zones is supported.

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System *iDataAgents*, refer to:

- System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - AIX File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - HP-UX File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - Linux File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - Solaris File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - Tru64 File System *iDataAgent*

The operating system must have been installed with at least the `user level software` option selected.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

```

/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/development` directory.

```

[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#

```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```

[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>

```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Oracle RAC *i*DataAgent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Oracle RAC *i*DataAgent:

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
ORACLE 10G/11G (R1, R2 OR HIGHER) RAC DATABASES ON:		
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
LINUX	ORACLE LINUX	
	Oracle Linux 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Oracle Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Oracle Linux 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 11.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
	Solaris 10.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1* *Core Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported

HARD DRIVE

See System Requirements - Oracle *i*DataAgent

MEMORY

See System Requirements - Oracle *i*DataAgent

ORACLE EXADATA DATABASE MACHINE SUPPORT

Oracle Exadata Database Machine is supported on the following Oracle Database versions:

- Oracle 11g (11.1.0.7)
- Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.1 or higher)

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

Data Protection of data residing on global and non-global zones is supported.

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The Oracle *iDataAgent* must be installed and configured prior to configuring the Oracle RAC *iDataAgent*. For System Requirements and install information specific to the Oracle *iDataAgent*, refer to System Requirements - Oracle *iDataAgent*.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

```

/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```

[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#

```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```

[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>

```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - PostgreSQL iDataAgent

[System Requirements](#) | [Supported Features](#)

The following requirements are for the PostgreSQL iDataAgent:

PostgreSQL version 9.x is supported with SP5A and the Enterprise DB version 9.0 is supported with SP5B.

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM

PROCESSOR

POSTGRESQL VERSION 8.2 (OR HIGHER) AND ENTERPRISE DB VERSION 8.3 (OR HIGHER) ON:

LINUX

RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x

Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x

Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4

Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors

SOURCE MAGE LINUX

Source Mage Linux

x64

SUSE LINUX (SLES)

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above

Itanium, x64 or compatible processors

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.6.x

Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors

HARD DRIVE

220 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

725 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgents, refer to System Requirements - Linux File System iDataAgent.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

DRIVERS

Drivers for SCSI Adapters (Supplied by your SCSI Adapter provider)

Drivers for media drives (Supplied by your media drive provider)

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System

Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - ProxyHost iDataAgent

System Requirements | Snapshot Support | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the ProxyHost iDataAgent:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
AIX	AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 32-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 64-bit with a minimum of OS patch level of December 2008 patch bundle or higher (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
LINUX	SuSE Linux 10.x with kernel 2.6.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5 with kernel 2.6.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x (all kernel and glibc versions supported)	Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 7	
	Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

UNIX

- 215 MB minimum of hard drive space for software
- 100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth
- 10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp directory resides)

WINDOWS

- 112 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended
- 50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth
- 725 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

UNIX

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

WINDOWS

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Fiber Channel Card (HBA)

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgents, refer to:

- System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - AIX File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - HP-UX File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Linux File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Solaris File System iDataAgent

The operating system must have been installed with at least the `user level software` option selected.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<pre><directory>/<file_name>.te</pre> <p>where:</p> <pre><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</pre> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) #####</pre> <p>where:</p> <p><name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name.</p> <p><version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</p> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<pre><directory>/<file_name>.fc</pre> <p>where:</p> <pre><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</pre> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.

For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc

```
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - SAP for MAXDB iDataAgent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the SAP for MAXDBiDataAgent:

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR	
SAP MAXDB 7.5, 7.6, 7.7, 7.8 AND 7.9 ON:			
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)	
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)	
	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium	
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium	
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS		
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors	
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)		
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors	
	SOLARIS	Solaris 11.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
		Solaris 10.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
	WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1* *Core Editions not supported		All Windows-compatible processors supported	
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2003		
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported	

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

WINDOWS

111 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

725 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

UNIX

220 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

MEMORY

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

Data Protection of data residing on global and non-global zones is supported.

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgents, refer to:

- System Requirements - AIX File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - HP-UX File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Linux File System iDataAgent
- System Requirements - Solaris File System iDataAgent

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<p><directory>/<file_name>.te</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context</pre>

backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc	<pre>(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - SAP for Oracle iDataAgent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the SAP for Oracle iDataAgent:

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
SAP BR*TOOLS 7.0, 7.1, 7.2 AND 7.4 FOR ORACLE 10G/11G (R1, R2 OR HIGHER) DATABASES ON:		
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 11.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
	Solaris 10.x	x64, Sparc5 (or higher recommended)
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1*	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	*Core Editions not supported	
	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

WINDOWS

112 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

725 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

UNIX

230 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

MEMORY**WINDOWS**

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

HP-UX

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

SOLARIS

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

Data Protection of data residing on global and non-global zones is supported.

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System *iDataAgents*, refer to:

- System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - AIX File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - HP-UX File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - Linux File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - Solaris File System *iDataAgent*

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level software` option selected.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module,

<p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>such as a process or application name.</p> <p><version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</p> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Sybase iDataAgent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Sybase iDataAgent:

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
SYBASE ASE 15.7 64-BIT ON:		
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.5, 5.6, 5.7 and 5.8	
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x	x64
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-16, 117560-06 and 111722-05	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	x64
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
SYBASE ASE 15.7 32-BIT ON:		
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
SYBASE ASE 15.5 64-BIT ON:		
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x	x64
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	

	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.6.x	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	x64
SOLARIS	Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-16, 117560-06 and 111722-05	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	x64
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported

SYBASE ASE 15.5 32-BIT ON:

LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.6.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02	Sparc5 or higher recommended
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2	All Windows-compatible processors supported

SYBASE ASE 15.0.X 32-BIT/64-BIT ON:

AIX	AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 64-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.6.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS 2003	

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

WINDOWS

674 MB minimum of hard disk space for Calypso and Job Results

10 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

4 KB for Job Results

LINUX

584 MB minimum of hard disk space for Calypso and Job Results

1 MB for Job Results

SOLARIS

2.73 GB minimum of hard disk space for Calypso and Job Results

34 MB for Job Results

MEMORY

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

Data Protection of data residing on global and non-global zones is supported.

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System *iDataAgents*, refer to:

- System Requirements - AIX File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - HP-UX File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - Linux File System *iDataAgent*
- System Requirements - Solaris File System *iDataAgent*

The operating system must have been installed with at least the `user level software` option selected.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<pre><directory>/<file_name>.te where: <directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</pre>	<pre>The content of the file should be as follows: policy_module(<name>,<version>) #####</pre>

<p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>where:</p> <p><name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name.</p> <p><version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</p> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

SUPPORTED FILE SYSTEMS

All the File Systems that are supported by your Operating system

The raw devices supported by your Operating system

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - AIX File System *iDataAgent*

AIX	HP-UX	FreeBSD	Linux	Solaris	Tru64	Supported Features
-----	-------	---------	-------	---------	-------	--------------------

The following are the requirements for AIX File System *iDataAgent*:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Note that all AIX platforms support Logical Partitions (LPAR).		

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

750 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

500 MB of reserved hard disk space for the Job Results directory

1 GB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

For information on space requirements to install/upgrade the File System and service pack, see Service Pack - System Requirements.

MEMORY

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SUPPORTED FILE SYSTEMS

The AIX File System *iDataAgent* supports the following file systems: Enhanced Journal File System (JFS2)

General Parallel File System (GPFS)

Journal File System (JFS)

VERITAS File System (VxFS)

VOLUME MANAGERS

Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) 5.0 or higher

Logical Volume Manager (LVM)

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - HP-UX File System *iDataAgent*

AIX	HP-UX	FreeBSD	Linux	Solaris	Tru64	Supported Features
-----	-------	---------	-------	---------	-------	--------------------

The following are the requirements for HP-UX File System *iDataAgent*:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 64-bit with a minimum of OS patch level of December 2008 patch bundle or higher (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

750 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

500 MB of reserved hard disk space for the Job Results directory

1 GB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

For information on space requirements to install/upgrade the File System and service pack, see Service Pack - System Requirements.

MEMORY

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SUPPORTED FILE SYSTEMS

The HP-UX File System *iDataAgent* supports the following file systems:

Hierarchical File System (HFS)

Journal File System (JFS)

Unix File System (UFS)

VERITAS File System (VxFS)

VERITAS Cluster File System (VxCFS)

VOLUME MANAGERS

Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) 5.0 or higher

Logical Volume Manager (LVM)

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - FreeBSD File System *iDataAgent*

AIX	HP-UX	FreeBSD	Linux	Solaris	Tru64	Supported Features
-----	-------	---------	-------	---------	-------	--------------------

The following are the requirements for FreeBSD File System *iDataAgent*:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
FREEBSD	FreeBSD 9.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	FreeBSD 8.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	FreeBSD 7.3 (or higher)	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

750 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

500 MB of reserved hard disk space for the Job Results directory

1 GB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

For information on space requirements to install/upgrade the File System and service pack, see Service Pack - System Requirements.

MEMORY

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SUPPORTED FILE SYSTEMS

The FreeBSD File System *iDataAgent* supports the following file systems:

Unix File System (UFS)

Zettabyte File System (ZFS)

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Linux File System *i*DataAgent

AIX	HP-UX	FreeBSD	Linux	Solaris	Tru64	Supported Features
-----	-------	---------	-------	---------	-------	--------------------

The following are the requirements for Linux File System *i*DataAgent:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
LINUX	DEBIAN	
	Debian 7.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Debian 6.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Debian 5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	FEDORA	
	Fedora release 9 with glibc 2.8.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Fedora release 8 with glibc 2.7.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Fedora release 17 with glibc 2.15.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Fedora release 16 with glibc 2.14.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Fedora release 15 with glibc 2.13.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Fedora release 14 with glibc 2.13.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Fedora release 13 with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Fedora release 12 with glibc 2.11.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Fedora release 11 with glibc 2.10.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Fedora release 10 with glibc 2.9.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	GENTOO	
	Gentoo release 11 with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Gentoo release 10.1 with glibc 2.6.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	MANDRIVA	
	Mandriva Linux 2010 with glibc 2.10.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Mandriva Linux 2009 with glibc 2.9.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	OPENSUSE	
	OpenSuSE 13.1 with glibc 2.18.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	OpenSuSE 12.3 with glibc 2.17.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	OpenSuSE 12.2 with glibc 2.15.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	OpenSuSE 12.1 with glibc 2.14.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	OpenSuSE 11.3 with glibc 2.11.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	OpenSuSE 11.2 with glibc 2.10.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	OpenSuSE 11.1 with glibc 2.9.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	OpenSuSE 11.0 with glibc 2.8.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	ORACLE LINUX	
	Oracle Linux 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Oracle Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Oracle Linux 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	RED FLAG LINUX	

Red Flag Linux 5.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	x64
Red Flag Linux 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 6.x with glibc 2.12.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
SCIENTIFIC LINUX	
Scientific Linux SL 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	x64
Scientific Linux 6.x	x64
SLACKWARE	
Slackware 14.0 with glibc 2.15.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
UBUNTU	
Ubuntu 9.10	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Ubuntu 9.04	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Ubuntu 8.10	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Ubuntu 8.04	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Ubuntu 12.04 LTS	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Ubuntu 11.10	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Ubuntu 11.04	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Ubuntu 10.04 LTS	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Z-LINUX	Linux on zSeries (System z9/z10)
	s390x 64-bit, s390 31-bit
RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x	s390x 64-bit, s390 31-bit
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x	s390x 64-bit, s390 31-bit
SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
SuSE Linux 11.x Enterprise Server	s390x 64-bit, s390 31-bit
SuSE Linux 10.x Enterprise Server	s390x 64-bit, s390 31-bit

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

750 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

500 MB of reserved hard disk space for the Job Results directory

1 GB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

For information on space requirements to install/upgrade the File System and service pack, see Service Pack - System Requirements.

MEMORY

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

SUPPORTED FILE SYSTEMS

The Linux File System iDataAgent supports the following file systems:

- B-tree File System (Btrfs)
- Extended 2 File System (ext2)
- Extended 3 File System (ext3)
- Extended 4 File System (ext4)
- General Parallel File System (GPFS)
- Global File System (GFS/GFS2)
- Lustre File System (Clustered File System)
- Moose File System (MooseFS)
- Oracle Cluster File System (OCFS2)
- Reiser File System (reiserfs)
- VERITAS File System (VxFS)
- VERITAS Cluster File System (VxCFS)
- X9000 IBRIX File System (IBRIXFS) 6.x
- 'X' File System (XFS)

VOLUME MANAGERS

- Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) 5.0 or higher
- Logical Volume Manager (LVM)

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Solaris File System *iDataAgent*

AIX	HP-UX	FreeBSD	Linux	Solaris	Tru64	Supported Features
-----	-------	---------	-------	---------	-------	--------------------

The following are the requirements for Solaris File System *iDataAgent*:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 11.x	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 11.x	x64
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x (OpenSolaris supported)	x64
	Solaris 10.x (Flying Zones supported)	Sparc5 or higher recommended

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see [Clustering - Support](#).

HARD DRIVE

750 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

500 MB of reserved hard disk space for the Job Results directory

1 GB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

For information on space requirements to install/upgrade the File System and service pack, see [Service Pack - System Requirements](#).

MEMORY

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

Data Protection of data residing on global and non-global zones is supported.

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see [Unix Virtualization](#).

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SUPPORTED FILE SYSTEMS

Unix File System (UFS)

VERITAS File System (VxFS)

VERITAS Cluster File System (VxCFS)

Zettabyte File System (ZFS)

VOLUME MANAGERS

Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) 5.0 or higher

Solaris Volume Manager (SVM)

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Tru64 File System *iDataAgent*

AIX	HP-UX	FreeBSD	Linux	Solaris	Tru64	Supported Features
-----	-------	---------	-------	---------	-------	--------------------

The following are the requirements for Tru64 File System *iDataAgent*:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
TRU64	Tru64 OSF1 Release 5.1B-3 or higher	Compaq® (DEC) AlphaServer DS Series computer or higher recommended

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

750 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

500 MB of reserved hard disk space for the Job Results directory

1 GB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

For information on space requirements to install/upgrade the File System and service pack, see Service Pack - System Requirements.

MEMORY

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SUPPORTED FILE SYSTEMS

The Tru64 File System *iDataAgent* supports the following file systems:

Unix File System (UFS)

Advanced File System (advfs)

VERITAS File System (VxFS)

VERITAS Cluster File System (VxCFS)

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Virtual Server *iDataAgent* (Hyper-V)

[System Requirements](#)[Supported Features](#)

The following requirements are for the Virtual Server *iDataAgent*:

HYPER-V REQUIREMENTS

VIRTUAL SERVER APPLICATION SOFTWARE

Hyper-V version 6.x

PHYSICAL MACHINE OPERATING SYSTEMS - HYPER-V VIRTUAL SERVERS

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

Microsoft Hyper-V Server 2008 R2 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2012 Editions*

Microsoft Hyper-V Server 2012 Editions*

*Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 must be installed on these machines before installing the Virtual Server *iDataAgent*.

HARD DRIVE

100GB recommended. If performing backups with the granular recovery option enabled, the location of the Job Results folder should contain additional space to accommodate at least 2 percent of the total amount of data being backed up.

MEMORY

2 GB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

MISCELLANEOUS

ALLOCATION UNIT SIZE OF THE NTFS VOLUMES

The cluster size or the allocation unit size of an NTFS volume in a virtual machine must be multiple of 1024 bytes. You can set the cluster size before formatting a volume. The default cluster size is 4096 bytes.

NOTES ON VIRTUAL SERVER *iDATAAGENT* INSTALLATIONS FOR HYPER-V

The Virtual Server *iDataAgent* is installed directly onto the Hyper-V Server.

Ensure that the latest Microsoft HotFixes for Hyper-V are installed:

- Hyper-V: Update List for Windows Server 2008 R2
- Hyper-V: Update List for Windows Server 2012

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Virtual Server iDataAgent (VMware)

[System Requirements](#) | [Supported Features](#)

The following requirements are for the Virtual Server iDataAgent:

VIRTUAL SERVER APPLICATION SOFTWARE

VMWARE ESX SERVER

VMware ESX/ ESXi 4.x, 5.0, 5.1

vSphere 4.x, 5.0, or 5.1

Before configuring Virtual Server iDataAgent for ESXi servers, consider the following:

- VADP is not available in the free version of ESXi and requires the Essentials licensing level or higher.
- Proxy computers must be running Windows Server 2008 or higher for ESX Server version 5.0 or 5.1.
- VDDK 5.0 is required for this version of ESX server. VDDK 5.0 update 1 is installed automatically with Service pack 6A or higher.

vSphere 5.5 and VDDK 5.5 are supported only in Calypso Version 10. If you need this support, CommVault recommends upgrading to Version 10. You can begin by upgrading the CommServe system, Virtual Server Agent, and MediaAgent, and upgrade the rest of the CommCell environment later.

VMWARE VCENTER SERVER APPLIANCE

VMware vCenter Server Appliance 5.0.0

VIRTUAL MACHINE HARDWARE

Version 4.0, 7.0, 8.0, 9.0

VIRTUAL MACHINE OPERATING SYSTEMS

All Guest Operating Systems supported by VADP and VCB

PROXY COMPUTER OPERATING SYSTEMS

Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 is not supported for Calypso Version 9.

Microsoft Windows Server 2012 x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions

VM LIFECYCLE MANAGEMENT

The following conditions must be considered when utilizing VM Lifecycle Management:

- VMware vCenter 4.1 is required
- VMware Tools (version 8288) must be installed on templates
- Windows Server 2008, Windows 7, and Linux (RedHat5) are supported

HARD DRIVE

100 GB recommended.

If performing backups with the granular recovery option enabled, the location of the Job Results folder should contain additional space to accommodate at least 2 percent of the total amount of data being backed up.

MEMORY

1 GB RAM minimum required; 4 GB RAM recommended.

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

ALLOCATION UNIT SIZE OF THE NTFS VOLUMES

The cluster size or the allocation unit size of an NTFS volume in a virtual machine must be multiple of 1024 bytes. You can set the cluster size before formatting a volume. The default cluster size is 4096 bytes.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

NOTES ON VIRTUAL SERVER iDATAAGENT INSTALLATIONS FOR VMWARE

For VMware, the Virtual Server iDataAgent is installed on a proxy computer that can communicate with the host computer.

Ensure that the VDDK 5.1 is not installed on any host.

SUPPORT FOR VCB ENVIRONMENT

The following utilities must be installed prior to performing any backup operations in the VCB Environment using the Virtual Server iDataAgent (these packages can be obtained from the VMware web site):

- VMware Consolidated Backup (refer to the VMware customer support web site for support information for the VMware Consolidated Backup utility.)
 - The Virtual Server iDataAgent supports all modes supported by the VMware Consolidated Backup utility.
 - Refer to the VMware customer support web site for support information for the VMware Consolidated Backup utility.
- VMware Converter 4.0.1 (refer to the VMware customer support web site for support information for the VMware Converter utility.)
 - Ensure that the guest operating systems are using the supported version of the VMware Converter.
 - The vCenter Converter Standalone 4.0.1 package must be installed for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008 environments.

Ensure that the latest version of VMware Consolidated Backup and that VMware Converter 4.0.1 are installed.

- Restores of entire virtual machines from ESX Server 4.0 to a prior version of ESX Server are not supported.
- Virtual machines from ESX Server 3.5 can be backed up through vcbmounter, but they are restored through vStorage.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Virtual Server *i*DataAgent (Xen)

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Virtual Server *i*DataAgent:

XEN REQUIREMENTS

VERSIONS OF XENSERVICES SUPPORTED

Citrix XenServer 5.5
Citrix XenServer 5.6
Citrix XenServer 6.0
Citrix XenServer 6.1
Citrix XenServer 6.2

GUEST OPERATING SYSTEM

The Agent can be installed on the following Operating Systems:

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1
Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions
Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 x64 Edition

HARD DRIVE

HARD DRIVE SPACE REQUIRED ON STORAGE REPOSITORIES

Xen Virtual Server agent requires hard disk space to create snapshots of Virtual machines that are being backed up. Ensure that the storage repository has sufficient temporary space for snapshots during a backup job. The size required for a snapshot depends on the type of Storage Repository, and could be as large as the size of the virtual machine being backed up.

117 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended
100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth
775 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

A minimum of 2.0 GB RAM is required.

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive
Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

ALLOCATION UNIT SIZE OF THE NTFS VOLUMES

The cluster size or the allocation unit size of an NTFS volume in a virtual machine must be multiple of 1024 bytes. You can set the cluster size before formatting a volume. The default cluster size is 4096 bytes.

NOTES ON VIRTUAL SERVER *i*DATAAGENT INSTALLATIONS FOR XEN

- Ensure that the virtual machine where you have installed the Virtual Server *i*DataAgent has a xencenter name that is the same as its short host name.
- .NET Framework 3.5 with Service Pack 1 must be installed prior to performing disk level backups.

- Xen tools version 5.5 or 6.0 must be installed.

XEN TOOLS

The following services must be running on the proxy virtual machine prior to performing backups:

- COM+ System Application
- COM+ Event System
- Remote Procedure Call (RPC)
- Virtual Disk Service
- Citrix tools for Virtual Machines

Virtualization State of the VMs backed up should be Optimized. This state is visible in XenCenter console, on the General tab of the VMs.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Workstation Backup Agent - Source

Source	Destination	Supported Features
--------	-------------	--------------------

The following requirements are for Workstation Backup Agent Source Computer:

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
DESKTOP CLASS ON:		
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 7	
	Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS VISTA	
	Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS XP	
	Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Edition* with a minimum of Service Pack 3	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	*Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 922582 to obtain this patch.	
	Microsoft Windows XP Home 32-bit Edition* with a minimum of Service Pack 3	All Windows-compatible processors supported
SERVER CLASS ON:		
WINDOWS SERVER 2003	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2	All Windows-compatible processors supported
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
HARD DRIVE		
221 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 221 MB recommended		
100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth		
775 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)		
MEMORY		
32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications		
PERIPHERALS		
DVD-ROM drive		
Network Interface Card		
MISCELLANEOUS		
NETWORK		
TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.		
NET FRAMEWORK		
.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.		
MICROSOFT VISUAL C++		
Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.		

For installation using MSI packages on Windows Vista and Windows 7, Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package must be manually installed.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Workstation Backup Agent - Destination

Source	Destination	Supported Features
--------	-------------	--------------------

The destination is a computer installed with ContinuousDataReplicator. The following operating systems are supported for destination:

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2

HARD DRIVE

66 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

775 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

512 MB RAM minimum required, of which a minimum of 64 MB RAM is required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications for successful ContinuousDataReplicator operations; 1 GB RAM recommended.

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

The File System iDataAgent is not automatically installed during installation of the ContinuousDataReplicator. If you wish to install the File System iDataAgent, you must select the option to do so during installation of the ContinuousDataReplicator. For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Content Indexing Engine

The following requirements are for the Content Indexing Engine:

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 x64 Editions

HARD DRIVE

6 GB of local disk space for software

1.5 TB of local disk space for index directories (must be high speed disk in a RAID configuration with at least 3 physical drives)

Locally attached SAS disk is recommended

See also Notes on Space Requirements.

MEMORY

16 GB RAM minimum required; 24 GB RAM recommended

Virtual memory should be set to twice the amount of available physical memory

PROCESSOR

Dual-Core Intel® Xeon® processor 5100 series minimum required; Quad-Core Intel® Xeon® processor 5300 series recommended

PORT REQUIREMENTS

A sequential port range that spans 4000 ports on each computer that will host the Content Indexing Engine. For example, port range 13000 - 17000.

These are local ports used by the Content Indexing Services. These ports are NOT required to be opened in the firewall.

By default the Content Indexing Engine uses a default base port number of 13000 and a default administration GUI port number of 16000 (base port plus 3000). Using ports below 1024 is not recommended.

It is recommended not to use a base port in the range 23000 - 27000 since the license server always uses port number 27000.

HARDWARE REQUIREMENTS

The hardware requirements depends on the components installed on the server. Refer the following for more details:

- Dedicated Admin Node Server
- Dedicated Index Node Server
- Single Server

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent.

NETWORK

Prior to installing the Content Indexing Engine with multiple nodes, make sure the following:

- Gigabit or better network should be available.
- The admin and index nodes must reside on the same GIGE LAN subnet.
- Each node should have a single physical network interface card (NIC) with a unique name and a static IP address on all host computers where the Content Indexing Engine will be installed.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 3.5 with Service Pack 1 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 3.5 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NOTES ON CONTENT INDEXING ENGINE INSTALLATIONS

The Content Indexing Engine is a resource intensive application that requires dedicated servers. There should be no other applications or software components installed.

Each node should have a single physical network interface card (NIC) with a unique name and a static IP address on all host computers where the Content Indexing Engine will be installed.

Content Indexing Engines can only be installed on hosts that have a fully qualified domain name.

Before installing the Content Indexing Engine on a Windows 2008 machine, it is recommended to turn off the User Account Control (UAC).

Use the `ipconfig/all` command to verify the hostname and fully qualified domain name for the installation host. Also, ensure the hostname and the fully qualified domain name are reachable from the CommCell network and resolve correctly using DNS.

Perform forward and reverse lookups on the host's fully qualified domain name. Execute the command `nslookup <host_name.fully_qualified_domain_name.com>` where `host_name.fully_qualified_domain_name.com` is the fully qualified domain name of the installation host. Repeat for each installation host and note the reply from the command. Make a reverse lookup on the IP address returned by the command. Make sure that the primary host name is the same as the one returned by the name lookup. In short, for each host, the information across these commands and files should be consistent: `hostname`, `nslookup` and/or `ipconfig`.

If you are planning to install other instances, install the Content Indexing Engine as the first instance and provide a Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) for the computer being used for Content Indexing Engine.

When installing on multiple nodes, make sure that all the nodes are physical servers. It is advised not to have a mixed environment of virtual and physical servers.

Also, the date/time on the nodes must be synchronized.

The Content Indexing Engine requires that the clock is kept in sync and not abruptly corrected forwards or backwards. Avoid manual clock adjustments and consider using professional software for keeping clocks synchronized.

Set the server Time Zone to either GMT or UTC and always uncheck the option **Automatically adjust clock for daylight saving changes** on the Time Zone settings.

It is recommended that anti-virus software is not run on the servers running the Content Indexing Engine. If anti-virus software must be installed as a business requirement, the Content Indexing software and data directories must be excluded from real-time or scheduled scanning.

Disable the Windows Indexing Service. The Content Indexing data directory should be located on a dedicated physical disk separate from the operating system and application installations. The optimal configuration would include a mirrored set (RAID1) for the operating system and application installations and a striped set (RAID 5 or 10) for the Content Indexing data directory.

If possible, install The Content Indexing Engine on a separate physical disk than the one Windows is running from. e.g., C:\. Do not assign the paging file or system directories on this disk. The optimal is to install The Content Indexing Engine on a striped disk array (RAID 0).

If a Multi Node installation is performed, the temporary directory of the user doing the installation needs to be on a partition with the administrative share enabled, and this user needs to be able to access that administrative share. The user's temporary directory is usually on the C:\ partition. To test if the administrative share is enabled and accessible for partition C:\ on the host `myhost.example.com`, execute the command `dir \\myhost.example.com\c$` from a different host. This should produce the same output as the command `dir c:` run locally on `myhost.example.com`.

When installing behind a firewall, make sure that all the nodes are in the same side of the firewall.

In a multi-node setup, the admin node and the index nodes must reside on the same GIGE LAN subnet.

Outlook 2003 or later should be installed on the Web Search node.

INSTALLATION TYPES

The Content Indexing Engine provides two installation types:

- **SINGLE NODE**

Installs all required components on a single host. This installation type is primarily intended for evaluation or demonstration purposes and smaller environments. The installation requires very little user interaction, but the user should be familiar with most of the concepts explained for the Multi Node installation type before running the installer. See [Install the Content Indexing Engine - Single Node Installation](#) for step-by-step instructions.

For all in one installs, make sure that the installation node is a physical server.

- **MULTI NODE**

Provides a fully interactive GUI for selecting and deploying components across all target hosts. This will build an `InstallProfile.xml` file which contains the full system description. This must be saved, and used during the installation for all the nodes in the cluster. See [Install the Content Indexing Engine - Multi-Node Installation](#) for step-by-step instructions.

Contact Professional Services for assistance in planning and deploying the Content Indexing Engine and Search in your environment.

NOTES ON SPACE REQUIREMENTS

It is a best practice to allocate 1TB space per node for the Content Indexing Engine. This allocation of space will account for the required space necessary to sustain the metadata within the index and the transient need to allocate additional space as the index partitions are built and re-distributed. During the re-distribution of indexed content among partitions, the space consumption of what is in the INDEX at the time of the partition re-order will be 100% of the index footprint. On completion of that partition ordering process the staging space is released.

This is very similar to the optimization process that any indexer (eg., Alta Vista, a deduplication appliance, etc) will use for re-ordering the content associated with index performance optimization.

For email data within the Index, the estimate will be 33% of the size of the total mail volume to be indexed as part of the index size.

For file system data within the Index, the estimate will be between 3-10% depending on the data type.

Examples:

- In the case of a small text only document, since the file is very small and only composed of text, the index footprint would be 100%.
- A 3MB Microsoft PowerPoint presentation will normally index to approximately 10-20KB of the text.
- A document including many images may index to a handful of pages of actual text and have a 1-3% index footprint.

There are a couple of ways to reduce the size of the Content Indexes.

1. Filters can be defined that either include or exclude specific document types. Images and multimedia files are of no value in a Content Index as they have no body to index.
2. Set proper retention settings for the Content Indexes. For example, if vast majority of searches will be performed within 90 days of them entering the system, then you can set the retention settings such that the Content Indexes expire after 90 days. All data that was retained can still be re-Content Indexed if there was a special need to retain them beyond the retention date.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Online Content Indexing for File System Agent

This feature/product/platform is deprecated in this release. See [Deprecated Features, Products, and Platforms](#) for more information.

The following requirements are for Online Content Indexing File System Agent:

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS VISTA

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 3

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see [Clustering - Support](#).

HARD DRIVE

149 MB of local disk space for software/ 548 MB recommended

88 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

MISCELLANEOUS

For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#).

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System

Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

APPLICATION

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2010 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

154 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 548 MB recommended
50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth for each iDataAgent
729 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NOTES ON EXCHANGE 2007 INSTALLATIONS

Online Content Indexing Exchange is only supported on off-host proxy.

System Requirements - Web Search Server

The following requirements are for the Web Search Server:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Outlook 2010 x64 Editions to support Exchange and Domino email recovery

Lotus Notes Client Release 8 or higher to support Domino email recovery

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*

*If using for Lotus Notes recovery

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 x64 Editions*

*If not using for Lotus Notes recovery

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

HARD DRIVE

161 MB of local disk space for Web Search Server software and log file growth/ 499 MB recommended

170 MB of local disk space for the Microsoft SQL application and database/ 498 MB recommended. (Microsoft SQL Server is embedded in the Web Server software installation)

200 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

The job results directory for the File System iDataAgent that is installed on the Web Search Server should have enough space to cache the search restores from users. This depends on the number of files that may be restored, disk quota and the retention period configured by the administrator.

In time, you may need to provide additional space (several GB) to allow for growth in the Web Search Server database. The size of the metadata depends on the search operation performed and quantity of data stored.

MEMORY

1 GB RAM minimum required; 2 GB RAM recommended.

Virtual memory should be set to twice the amount of available physical memory

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

WEB BROWSER

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) versions 7.0, 8.0

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) versions 9.0 and 10.0 (*Compatibility View must be enabled*)

Mozilla Firefox version 3.x or higher

Safari version 3.x or higher. (Some functionalities for Safari on Windows/Macintosh may not be supported). See IIS Settings for Safari on Web Search Server.

Google Chrome 4.0 or higher

DATABASE ENGINE

The CommServe must be installed on Microsoft SQL Server 2008 (Enterprise Edition). See **Database Engine** under System Requirements - CommServe - Enterprise Version for more information.

HARDWARE REQUIREMENTS

The hardware requirements depends on the components installed on the server. Refer the following for more details:

- Single Server
- Dedicated Web Search Server and Web Search Client Node

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

These requirements are in addition to the requirements of the CommServe software.

Microsoft Visual J# 2.0 Redistributable

Microsoft ASP.NET 3.5 Ajax Extensions 1.0

File System iDataAgent - For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent.

For successful web restore of NAS data and Domino emails, install a 32-bit File System proxy instance on a 64-bit machine.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

IIS

Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager version 6.0

Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager version 7.0 (on Windows 2008 only)

Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager version 7.5

All components of Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager version 7.0 should be installed on windows 2008

OUTLOOK ADD-IN

- Microsoft Office Outlook with the latest service pack. Also, in order to take advantage of Web Search Client/Server capabilities from the Outlook Add-In, make sure that the latest service pack for Microsoft Office Outlook application is installed on the client where Outlook Add-In is installed.
- Microsoft Outlook 2003 SP2 or later, or Lotus Notes. NOTE: The 32-bit applications on a 64-bit server will require a second 32-bit File System agent. For x64, use Microsoft Outlook 2010.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 3.5 with Service Pack 1 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 3.5 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NOTES ON IIS SETTINGS FOR SAFARI ON WEB SERVER

The Web Server is a resource intensive application and should be installed on a dedicated server. Hence, we recommend that the Web Server not be installed on a computer running other applications, such as Microsoft Exchange Server, an Oracle database, etc.

The software should not be installed on a compressed drive.

The Microsoft SQL Server application that is installed on the computer must be dedicated to support the software and cannot be shared by other applications.

The computer on which the software is installed must have a static IP address. The software does not support Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).

The database instance used by the software requires specific SQL server settings. Verify the following settings by viewing the SQL properties using the SQL Management Studio and by running the SQL Server system stored procedure, which is `sp_helpsort`.

- Character Set is `1252/ISO` (default)
- Sort Order is `Dictionary order, case Insensitive`
- Unicode Collation includes `General Unicode, case Insensitive, width Insensitive`
- Verify the following from the `Data Files` tab of the `tempdb Properties` dialog box:
 - The `tempdb` SQL database has at least 100 MB of disk space
 - The `Automatically grow file` option is selected

- The `file growth` is set to 20%

If there is a firewall between the CommServe and the Web Server, make sure that there is ODBC connectivity between the two servers and the appropriate ports are opened in the firewall. For information on setting up the SQL server connectivity, refer Microsoft KB article 914277.

The 64-bit Web Server Installation includes a 32-bit Windows File System iDataAgent installation.

IIS SETTINGS FOR SAFARI ON WEB SERVER

In order to access the Web Server from a Safari Web browser on a Macintosh computer, you need to perform the following IIS settings on the Web Search Server:

- From the IIS Manager window, select the WebSearchServer web site and select **Authentication** from the right window.
- From the **Properties (Directory Security)** tab, click **Edit** in the **Authentication and access control** group.
- From the Authentication Methods dialog box, select **Basic Authentication (password is sent in clear text)** option.
- IIS Manager displays a security warning message. Click **Yes**.
- Click **OK**.

NOTES ON IIS SETTINGS FOR SAFARI ON WEB SEARCH SERVER

The Web Search Server is a resource intensive application and should be installed on a dedicated server. Hence, we recommend that the Web Server not be installed on a computer running other applications, such as Microsoft Exchange Server, an Oracle database, etc.

The software should not be installed on a compressed drive.

The Microsoft SQL Server application that is installed on the computer must be dedicated to support the software and cannot be shared by other applications.

The computer on which the software is installed must have a static IP address. The software does not support Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).

The database instance used by the software requires specific SQL server settings. Verify the following settings by viewing the SQL properties using the SQL Management Studio and by running the SQL Server system stored procedure, which is `sp_helpsort`.

- Character Set is `1252/ISO` (default)
- Sort Order is `Dictionary order, case Insensitive`
- Unicode Collation includes `General Unicode, case Insensitive, width Insensitive`
- Verify the following from the `Data Files` tab of the `tempdb Properties` dialog box:
 - The `tempdb` SQL database has at least 100 MB of disk space
 - The `Automatically grow file` option is selected
 - The `file growth` is set to 20%

If there is a firewall between the CommServe and the Web Search Server, make sure that there is ODBC connectivity between the two servers and the appropriate ports are opened in the firewall. For information on setting up the SQL server connectivity, refer Microsoft KB article 914277.

The 64-bit Web Server Installation includes a 32-bit Windows File System iDataAgent installation.

IIS SETTINGS FOR SAFARI ON WEB SEARCH SERVER

In order to access the Web Search Server from a Safari Web browser on a Macintosh computer, you need to perform the following IIS settings on the Web Search Server:

- From the IIS Manager window, select the WebSearchServer web site and select **Authentication** from the right window.
- From the **Properties (Directory Security)** tab, click **Edit** in the **Authentication and access control** group.
- From the Authentication Methods dialog box, select **Basic Authentication (password is sent in clear text)** option.
- IIS Manager displays a security warning message. Click **Yes**.
- Click **OK**.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Web Search Client

The following requirements are for the Web Search Client:

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*

*If using for Lotus Notes recovery

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 x64 Editions*

*If not using for Lotus Notes recovery

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

HARD DRIVE

161 MB of local disk space for Web Search Client software and log file growth/ 499 MB recommended

200 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

1 GB RAM minimum required; 2 GB RAM recommended.

Virtual memory should be set to twice the amount of available physical memory

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

WEB BROWSER

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) versions 6.0, 7.0, 8.0

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) versions 9.0 and 10.0 (*Compatibility View must be enabled*)

Mozilla Firefox version 3.0 or higher

Safari version 3.x or higher.

Google Chrome 4.0 or higher

HARDWARE REQUIREMENTS

The hardware requirements depends on the components installed on the server. Refer the following for more details:

- Single Server
- Dedicated Web Search Server and Web Search Client Node

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The following will be automatically installed during the installation of this software if it is not already installed:

Apache Tomcat Server

File System iDataAgent - For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent.

For successful web restore of NAS data and Domino emails, install a 32-bit File System proxy instance on a 64-bit machine.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN

- Microsoft Office Outlook with the latest service pack. Also, in order to take advantage of Web Search Client/Server capabilities from the Outlook Add-In,

make sure that the latest service pack for Microsoft Office Outlook application is installed on the client where Outlook Add-In is installed.

- Microsoft Outlook 2003 SP2 or later, or Lotus Notes. NOTE: The 32-bit applications on a 64-bit server will require a second 32-bit File System agent. For x64, use Microsoft Outlook 2010.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Domino Mailbox Archiver Agent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The Domino Mailbox Archiver Agent supports the following Lotus Domino Server releases in both Domino Cluster and non-Domino Cluster environments.

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
LOTUS DOMINO SERVER RELEASE 8.02 32-BIT ON:		
AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	UltraSPARC III and higher recommended
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core and R2 Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
LOTUS DOMINO SERVER RELEASE 8.02 64-BIT ON:		
AIX	AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
LOTUS DOMINO SERVER RELEASE 8.5.X 32-BIT ON:		
AIX	AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x and above	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
SOLARIS	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	UltraSPARC III and higher recommended
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2003	

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2 All Windows-compatible processors supported

*Core Editions not supported

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 All Windows-compatible processors supported

LOTUS DOMINO SERVER RELEASE 8.5.X 64-BIT ON:

AIX	AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	*Core Editions not supported	
	WINDOWS 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2	All Windows-compatible processors supported

HARD DRIVE

1.5 GB minimum of hard disk space for software.

500 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

MEMORY

AIX, LINUX, AND SOLARIS

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

WINDOWS

32 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications*

*Very Large Memory Module (VLMM) supported.

LOTUS NOTES CLIENT ADD-IN

The Lotus Notes Client Add-In is supported with the following Lotus Notes client applications running on a Microsoft Windows platform:

- Notes Client 8.5.x
- Notes Client 8.0.x
- Notes Client 9.0.x

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The Domino Mailbox Archiver Agent does not support Domino Attachment and Object Service (DAOS).

If the Domino Mailbox Archiver Agent for Unix is installed on a client computer where the File Archiver for Unix Agent is installed and the computer is running a kernel not supported by the File Archiver for Unix Agent, then the GXHSMService will not launch. In such scenarios, uninstall the File Archiver for Unix Agent. This will not uninstall the GXHSMService as the Domino Mailbox Archiver Agent for Unix is still installed on the client computer.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```


- Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

For 32-bit Domino Servers running on Windows Server 2003 and 2008 x64 platforms, special considerations apply. See *Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform* for more information. For Windows Server 2008 platforms, Core Editions are not supported.

NOTES ON DOMINO CLUSTER INSTALLATIONS

If you are running a Lotus Domino Server in a Domino Cluster, special restore considerations apply. See *Restore Considerations for this Agent in Restore Data - Lotus Notes/Domino Server* for more information.

NOTES ON LOTUS NOTES CLIENT ADD-IN INSTALLATIONS

For Windows clients, JRE 1.7.0_17 is installed automatically with the Lotus Notes Client Add-In software if it is not already installed.

For Macintosh clients, JRE 1.5.x must be installed manually prior to installing the Lotus Notes Client Add-In software.

Lotus Client Add-In is supported only as 32-bit component on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform.

The Lotus Notes Client Add-In can be installed on the following platforms:

- Microsoft Windows Server 2008
- Microsoft Windows 7 Editions
- Microsoft Windows Vista Editions
- Microsoft Windows XP Editions

*Server Editions are not commonly used for the Client Add-In

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2010 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2013 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

500 MB minimum of hard disk space for software.

256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

SUPPORTED COMPONENTS

OWA PROXY ENABLER

The OWA Proxy Enabler is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT

The Outlook Add-In Client is supported with Microsoft Outlook 2003 or higher.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NOTES ON EXCHANGE COMPLIANCE ARCHIVER AGENT INSTALLATION

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server Agents are 32-bit MAPI-based Agents installed on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See *Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform* for information on installation and configuration requirements for these Agents.

The Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 Mailbox and Public Folder-based Agents can be installed in two ways:

- directly on the Microsoft Exchange Server computer
- as Proxy Agents on a separate computer running a supported 32-bit operating system

NOTES ON OUTLOOK OWA PROXY ENABLER INSTALLATION

Prior to configuring Web Access for Exchange 2007 Mailbox/Public Folder Archiver, Exchange WebProxy Archiver Agent, or OWA Proxy Enabler, ensure that the Client Access Role has been configured on the Exchange Server.

NOTES ON OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT INSTALLATION

For Windows clients, JRE 1.7.0_17 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

.NET Framework is needed to support RPC over HTTP connection mode, as well as support for the Exchange Offline Mining Tool. It is not automatically installed by the MSI package and must be manually installed.

Update 331320 must be installed on the client in order to use RPC over HTTP. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 331320 to obtain this patch.

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

System Requirements | **Supported Features**

The following requirements are for the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2010 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

OWA PROXY ENABLER

256 MB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT

50 MB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

721 MB of temp space required for install.

Ensure that your setup has disk space to install the following:

Visual Studio Tools for Office

.NET Framework 4

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

SUPPORTED COMPONENTS

OWA PROXY ENABLER

The OWA Proxy Enabler is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

WEB PROXY AGENT

The Web Proxy Agent is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT

The Outlook Add-In Client is supported with Microsoft Outlook 2003 or higher.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NOTES ON MICROSOFT EXCHANGE SERVER /DATAAGENT INSTALLATION

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server Agents are 32-bit MAPI-based Agents installed on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for information on installation and configuration requirements for these Agents.

- The Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 Mailbox and Public Folder-based Agents can be installed in two ways:
 - directly on the Microsoft Exchange Server computer
 - as Proxy Agents on a separate computer running a supported 32-bit operating system

NOTES ON OUTLOOK OWA PROXY ENABLER INSTALLATION

Prior to configuring Web Access for Exchange 2007 Mailbox/Public Folder Archiver, Exchange WebProxy Archiver Agent, or OWA Proxy Enabler, ensure that the Client Access Role has been configured on the Exchange Server.

NOTES ON OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT INSTALLATION

For Windows clients, JRE 1.7.0_17 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

.NET Framework is needed to support RPC over HTTP connection mode, as well as support for the Exchange Offline Mining Tool. It is not automatically installed by the MSI package and must be manually installed.

Update 331320 must be installed on the client in order to use RPC over HTTP. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 331320 to obtain this patch.

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

[System Requirements](#) | [Supported Features](#)

The following requirements are for the Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2010 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

OWA PROXY ENABLER

256 MB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT

50 MB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

721 MB of temp space required for install.

Ensure that your setup has disk space to install the following:

Visual Studio Tools for Office

.NET Framework 4

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

SUPPORTED COMPONENTS

OWA PROXY ENABLER

The OWA Proxy Enabler is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

WEB PROXY AGENT

The Web Proxy Agent is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT

The Outlook Add-In Client is supported with any version of Microsoft Outlook supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NOTES ON MICROSOFT EXCHANGE SERVER /DATAAGENT INSTALLATION

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server Agents are 32-bit MAPI-based Agents installed on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for information on installation and configuration requirements for these Agents.

- The Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 Mailbox and Public Folder-based Agents can be installed in two ways:
 - directly on the Microsoft Exchange Server computer
 - as Proxy Agents on a separate computer running a supported 32-bit operating system

NOTES ON OUTLOOK OWA PROXY ENABLER INSTALLATION

Prior to configuring Web Access for Exchange 2007 Mailbox/Public Folder Archiver, Exchange WebProxy Archiver Agent, or OWA Proxy Enabler, ensure that the Client Access Role has been configured on the Exchange Server.

NOTES ON OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT INSTALLATION

For Windows clients, JRE 1.7.0_17 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

.NET Framework is needed to support RPC over HTTP connection mode, as well as support for the Exchange Offline Mining Tool. It is not automatically installed by the MSI package and must be manually installed.

Update 331320 must be installed on the client in order to use RPC over HTTP. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 331320 to obtain this patch.

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - File Archiver for Unix Agent

System Requirements | Supported Features | Supported File Systems

The following requirements are for the File Archiver for Unix Agent and Add-On Archiver Agent:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	Note that all AIX platforms support Logical Partitions (LPAR).	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11.31 64-bit	Itanium
	HP-UX 11.31 64-bit	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11.23 64-bit	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11.23 64-bit	Itanium
LINUX	CENTOS	
	CentOS 5.4 with kernel 2.6.18-164	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	CentOS 5.3 with kernel 2.6.18-128	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	DEBIAN	
	Debian 5.x with kernel 2.6.26-2	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Debian 5.x with kernel 2.6.26.19-2	x64
	OES LINUX	
	Novell OES2 Linux up to SP2 (SLES 10 SP2) 64-bit	x64
	In order to perform a stub recall from Linux OES NSS volumes, Linux OES File System iDataAgent must be installed.	
	Novell OES2 Linux up to SP2 (SLES 10 SP2) 32-bit	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.9 with kernel 2.6.9-100 (Update 9)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.9 with kernel 2.6.9-100 (Update 9)	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-89 (Update 8)	x64	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-89 (Update 8)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7)	x64	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-67 (Update 6)	x64	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-67 (Update 6)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-55 (Update 5)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-55 (Update 5)	x64	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4)	x64	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3)	x64	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.32-71	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required	

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.32-71	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.32-131 (Update 1)	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-8	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-8	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-53 (Update 1)	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-53 (Update 1)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-238 (Update 6)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-238 (Update 6)	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-194 (Update 5)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-194 (Update 5)	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-164 (Update 4)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-164 (Update 4)	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.32.12-0.7 (Update 1)	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.32.12-0.7 (Update 1)	x64
SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.27.19-5	x64
SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.27.19-5	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.54.5 (Update 3)	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.54 (Update 3)	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.34 (Update 2)	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.21 (Update 2)	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.21 (Update 2)	x64
SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.46-0.12 (Update 1)	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
SOLARIS	
Solaris 9 64-bit with Service Packs 111711-02 and 111712-02	Ultra2 or higher recommended
Solaris 9 4/04 64-bit	Ultra2 or higher recommended
Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Ultra2 or higher recommended
Solaris 10.x (6/06 and higher) 64 bit	Ultra2 or higher recommended

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

- 250 MB minimum of hard disk space for software
- 50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth
- 719 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)
- 3.5 KB per file of cache partition

MEMORY

256 MB RAM or higher recommended total system memory

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

The File Archiver Agent should be installed on the global zone, and cannot be installed on a non-global zone.

The global instance of the File Archiver Agent can be used to archive data on a non-global zone.

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user level software` option selected.

LUSTRE FILE SYSTEM

Lustre File System version 2.0.0.1 is supported on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x computers with kernel 2.6.18-164.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. <code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code>
<code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code> where: <code><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same	The content of the file should be as follows: Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code> . Also, if required, add it to the following list of files. <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context</code>

<p>name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<pre>(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - File Archiver for Windows Agent

[System Requirements](#) | [Supported Features](#)

The following requirements are for the File Archiver for Windows Agent and Add-On Archiver Agent:

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS 8

Microsoft Windows Client 8
Microsoft Windows Client 8.1

See Considerations for Microsoft Windows Server 2012, 2012 R2, and Windows 8 for more information.

WINDOWS SERVER 2012

Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 Editions

See Considerations for Microsoft Windows Server 2012, 2012 R2, and Windows 8 for more information.

WINDOWS 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported.

WINDOWS VISTA

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate 32-bit Edition
Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate x64 Edition

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Edition with a minimum of Service Pack 3
Microsoft Windows XP Professional x64 Edition with a minimum of Service Pack 3

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

500 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

In addition, number of archived files * 4 KB space is required for stub cache directory.

500 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Special considerations apply if using the File Archiver for Windows Agent in an IPv6 environment. See [Configuring File Archivers and Internet Protocols](#) for more information.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - SharePoint Archiver Agent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the SharePoint Archiver Agent:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010
Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2010
Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Standard and Enterprise
Microsoft Search Server 2010
Microsoft FAST Search Server 2010
Microsoft Search Server 2010 Express

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1

* Special configuration considerations apply. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for more information.

HARD DRIVE

103 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended
50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth
717 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive
Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software.

Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - File Archiver for BlueArc Agent

[System Requirements](#) | [Supported Features](#)

The following requirements are for the File Archiver for BlueArc Agent:

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported.

WINDOWS VISTA

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate 32-bit Edition

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate x64 Edition

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Edition with a minimum of Service Pack 3

Microsoft Windows XP Professional x64 Edition with a minimum of Service Pack 3

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

FILE ARCHIVER FOR WINDOWS AGENT

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

500 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

In addition, number of archived files * 4 KB space is required for stub cache directory.

500 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

FILE SHARE ARCHIVER AGENT

600 MB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

FILE SERVERS

The File Archiver for BlueArc Agent can perform data protection/recovery operations for data on the following file server versions:

BlueArc OS 4.1

BlueArc OS 4.2

BlueArc OS 5.1

BlueArc OS 5.2

BlueArc OS 6.0

BlueArc OS 6.1

BlueArc OS 6.5

BlueArc OS 7.0

BlueArc OS 8.2

BlueArc OS 11.1

To configure and use File Archiver for Windows for Network File Share data see [Managing Network File Share Data](#).

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Special considerations apply if using the File Archiver for Windows Agent in an IPv6 environment. See [Configuring File Archivers and Internet Protocols](#) for more information.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - File Archiver for Celerra Agent

System Requirements | **Supported Features**

The following requirements are for the File Archiver for Celerra Agent:

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS VISTA

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate 32-bit Edition

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate x64 Edition

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Edition with a minimum of Service Pack 3

Microsoft Windows XP Professional x64 Edition with a minimum of Service Pack 3

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

500 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

In addition, number of archived files * 4 KB space is required for stub cache directory.

500 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

FILE SERVER

The File Archiver for Celerra Agent can perform data protection/recovery operations for data on the following file server versions:

VENDOR	FILE SERVER VERSION
EMC CELERRA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DART OS 5.5 • DART OS 5.6 • DART OS 6.0 • DART OS 7.0 <p style="text-align: center;">Virtual Data Mover (VDM) on DART 5.5 and 5.6 is supported.</p>
EMC VNX	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DART OS 7.0 • DART OS 7.1

	• DART OS 7.1.47
EMC VNX 2	

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Special considerations apply if using the File Archiver for Windows Agent in an IPv6 environment. See Configuring File Archivers and Internet Protocols for more information.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - File Archiver for NetApp Agent

[System Requirements](#) | [Supported Features](#)

The following requirements are for the File Archiver for NetApp Agent:

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS VISTA

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate 32-bit Edition

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate x64 Edition

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Edition with a minimum of Service Pack 3

Microsoft Windows XP Professional x64 Edition with a minimum of Service Pack 3

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

FILE ARCHIVER FOR WINDOWS AGENT

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

500 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

In addition, number of archived files * 4 KB space is required for stub cache directory.

500 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

FILE SHARE ARCHIVER AGENT

600 MB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

FILE SERVERS

The File Archiver for NetApp Agent can perform data protection/recovery operations for data on the following file server versions:

- ONTAP version 7.0
- ONTAP version 7.0.2
- ONTAP version 7.1
- ONTAP version 7.1.2.1
- ONTAP version 7.2
- ONTAP version 7.3

- ONTAP version 8.0
- ONTAP version 8.0.2
- ONTAP version 8.1
- ONTAP version 8.2
- vFiler

ONTAP versions 7.0, 7.2, 7.3 and 8.0 are supported for FPolicy. For versions earlier than 7.0 and version 7.1, a Network File Share Instance type must be used.

Each File Archiver for Windows agent can support multiple NetApp file servers, which have the same ONTAP version, whereas a separate File Archiver for Windows agent is required for each ONTAP version.

NOTES

For a proxy FPolicy server on a Windows 2008 computer, the filer server must be ONTAP version 8.0.2 and above. However, if you are using older ONTAP version, the proxy FPolicy server must be configured on a Windows 2003 computer.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Special considerations apply if using the File Archiver for Windows Agent in an IPv6 environment. See [Configuring File Archivers and Internet Protocols](#) for more information.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

- For standalone installs of File Share Archiver Clients, it is required to have the .NET Framework 2.0 Redistributable Package installed on the computer.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Generic NAS File Archiver

[System Requirements](#) | [Supported Features](#)

The following requirements are for the File Generic NAS File Archiver:

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS VISTA

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate 32-bit Edition

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate x64 Edition

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Edition with a minimum of Service Pack 3

Microsoft Windows XP Professional x64 Edition with a minimum of Service Pack 3

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

500 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

In addition, number of archived files * 4 KB space is required for stub cache directory.

500 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

FILE SERVERS

The File Archiver for Isilon and other Agents can perform data protection/recovery operations on the file server versions.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 3.5 with Service Pack 1 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 3.5 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Object Link

The following requirements are for the Object Link:

OPERATING SYSTEM

LINUX

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.2 with glibc 2.5.x

HARD DRIVE

1 GB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

1 TB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

50 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY

4 GB RAM minimum required; 8 GB RAM recommended

Swap space = 2*RAM size

PROCESSOR

Intel Pentium or compatible processors

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System *iDataAgents*, refer to System Requirements - Linux File System *iDataAgent*.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The following will be automatically installed during the installation of this software if it is not already installed:

- Apache Tomcat Server, Version 6.x
- PostgreSQL, Version 8.4.x

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - ContinuousDataReplicator

System Requirements | Snapshot Support | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the ContinuousDataReplicator:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
AIX	AIX 7.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	Note that all AIX platforms support Logical Partitions (LPAR).	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
LINUX	DEBIAN	
	Debian 5.x with kernel 2.6.26-2	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Debian 5.x with kernel 2.6.26.19-2	x64
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.32-71	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.32-71	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.32-131 (Update 1)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-8	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-8	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-53 (Update 1)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-53 (Update 1)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-238 (Update 6)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-238 (Update 6)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-194 (Update 5)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-194 (Update 5)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-164 (Update 4)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-164 (Update 4)	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)	Itanium	

	3)	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
SUSE LINUX (SLES)		
	SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.32.12-0.7 (Update 1)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.32.12-0.7 (Update 1)	x64
	SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.27.19-5	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.27.19-5	x64
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.54.5 (Update 3)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.34 (Update 2)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.21 (Update 2)	x64
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.21 (Update 2)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.46-0.12 (Update 1)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.46-0.12 (Update 1)	x64
SOLARIS		
	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x (6/06 and higher)	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x (6/06 and higher)	x64
WINDOWS		
WINDOWS 2008		
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
WINDOWS VISTA		
	Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
WINDOWS SERVER 2003	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2	All Windows-compatible processors supported

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

CDR ON WINDOWS:

260 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

720 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

- 1 GB minimum of additional hard disk space on the source computer for replication log file growth; more is recommended
- 1 GB of additional hard disk space on the destination computer for replication log file growth for each source computer (e.g., if five source computers are configured to use the same destination computer, then 5 GB of additional hard drive space is required on the destination computer)

CDR ON UNIX:

260 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

- 3 GB minimum of additional hard disk space on the source computer for replication log file growth; more is recommended. Maximum allowed is 80% of total space on the file system.

Refer to Data Replication for important considerations when allocating replication log file space.

MEMORY

AIX AND LINUX

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

WINDOWS

512 MB RAM minimum required, of which a minimum of 64 MB RAM is required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications for successful ContinuousDataReplicator operations; 1 GB RAM recommended.

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

The ContinuousDataReplicator should be installed on the global zone. Installation on non-global zones is not supported.

On the source computer, the ContinuousDataReplicator can be used to replicate data from any non-global zone.

On the destination computer, data can be replicated to a non-global zone through a exporting device from the global zone. See Data Replication on Non-Global Zones for more information.

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. <code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code>
<code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code> where: <code><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for	The content of the file should be as follows: Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code> . Also, if required, add it to the following list of files. <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCtreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context</code>

backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc	<pre>(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

NOTES ON WINDOWS INSTALLATION

Microsoft Windows XP is not supported as both source and destination for ContinuousDataReplicator.

When installing ContinuousDataReplicator client on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform, you must install Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0.

NOTES ON LINUX INSTALLATION

A compiled version of the CDR driver is supplied only for the listed versions and kernels. If you perform online updates of Linux, you may encounter a situation where the supplied CDR driver will not load after a reboot because the kernel has been updated to a new version.

If you are installing the software on a computer running Red Hat Linux 5 or above, the file system on the computer must be compiled as a kernel module.

For example: computers running Red Hat Linux 5 with the `ext2` file system will not support the ContinuousDataReplicator software, as the `ext2` file system is built into the kernel. Conversely, computers running Red Hat Linux 5 with the `ext3` file system compiled as a kernel module will support the ContinuousDataReplicator software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - SRM Server

The following requirements are for the SRM Server:

OPERATING SYSTEM

See CommServe - Operating System support

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

In addition to CommServe - Hard Disk requirements, the following space is required for SRM Server:

600 MB of local disk space for the SRM Server software.

600 MB of local disk space for the SRM database. (This is a prerequisite for installing and upgrading the SRM Server.)

1.8 GB of local disk space for the SRM database growth.

In time, you may need to provide additional space (several GB) to allow for growth in the SRM Server metadata. The size of the metadata depends on the number of computers, the data collection policies and database aging policies implemented in the SRM system.

MEMORY

In addition to CommServe - Memory requirements, the following memory is required for SRM Server:

1 GB RAM minimum required; 2 GB RAM recommended.

PROCESSOR

See CommServe - Processor support

DATABASE ENGINE

CommNet Sever must be installed on Microsoft SQL Server 2008 (Enterprise Edition). CommNet installations are not supported on any other Microsoft SQL Server versions. See **Database Engine** under System Requirements - CommServe - Enterprise Version for more information.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

SRM Server is supported on Enterprise version and not on Express versions.

The MediaAgent will be automatically installed during installation of the SRM Server if it is not already installed. Note that the MediaAgent cannot be deselected.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - SRM Exchange Agent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the SRM Agent for Microsoft Exchange Server.

APPLICATION

Microsoft Exchange 2003 Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2007 Server up to the latest service pack
Microsoft Exchange 2010 Server up to the latest service pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

104 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended
100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth
716 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

MEMORY

512 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive
Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software. These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.
SRM Exchange Agent supports 32 and 64 bit MAPI

EXCHANGE SERVER 2010 REQUIREMENTS

Mailbox Server Role and Client Access Server (CAS) role must be configured on the Exchange Server.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - SRM NAS Agent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The SRM NAS Agent software is installed on a computer (Proxy Agent) that can access the file server from which you wish to perform data collection. The following requirements are for the SRM NAS Agent for Network Attached Storage.

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.

256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

FILE SERVER

Data can be collected from file servers with the following Operating Systems:

NetApp ONTAP versions 6.5.7 through 8.2

Celerra DART versions 5.5 through 7.0

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Network connectivity between the proxy Agent and the NAS file servers that are configured as clients.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - SRM NetWare Proxy Agent

[System Requirements](#) | [Supported Features](#)

The SRM NetWare Proxy Agent for NetWare File System is installed on a computer that can access the NetWare Server for which you wish to perform data collection. The following requirements are for the SRM NetWare Proxy Agent for NetWare File System.

PROXY AGENT

NOVELL CLIENT

Novell Client version 4.91 SP4 and SP5 with the following operating system versions:

- Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Editions
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

NOVELL OPERATING SYSTEMS

Data can be collected from a NetWare server with the following Operating System:

- NetWare 6.5 with Support Pack 6, 7 and 8
 - Novell OES2 Linux up to SP2 (SLES 10 SP3) 32-bit and 64-bit
-

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

CLUSTER SUPPORT

See Clustering - Support

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

HARD DISK

104 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

30 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

77 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - SRM Oracle Agent

System Requirements | **Supported Features**

The SRM Oracle Agent can be installed on a computer that can access the Oracle database for which you wish to perform data collection. The following requirements are for the SRM Oracle Agent.

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core and R2 Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

124 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

754 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

ORACLE VERSIONS

Data can be collected from the following Oracle databases installed on any operating system supported by the respective database(s):

Oracle 10g (10.1.x) Database 32-bit and 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition)

Oracle 10g (10.1.x) RAC Database 32-bit and 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition)

Oracle 10g R2 (10.2.x) Database 32-bit and 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition)

Oracle 11g (11.1.0.6.0) Database 32-bit and 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition)

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - SRM SharePoint Agent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the SRM SharePoint Agent for SharePoint.

APPLICATION/OPERATING SYSTEM	PROCESSOR
MICROSOFT FAST SEARCH SERVER 2010 ON:	
WINDOWS SERVER 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	
MICROSOFT OFFICE PROJECT SERVER 2010 ON:	
WINDOWS SERVER 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	
MICROSOFT OFFICE SHAREPOINT SERVER 2007 ON:	
WINDOWS SERVER 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	
WINDOWS SERVER 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	
MICROSOFT SEARCH SERVER 2010 ON:	
WINDOWS SERVER 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	
MICROSOFT SEARCH SERVER 2010 EXPRESS ON:	
WINDOWS SERVER 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	
MICROSOFT SHAREPOINT 2010 STANDARD AND ENTERPRISE ON:	
WINDOWS SERVER 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	
MICROSOFT SHAREPOINT FOUNDATION 2010 ON:	
WINDOWS SERVER 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	
MICROSOFT SHAREPOINT PORTAL SERVER 2003 32-BIT WITH SERVICE PACK 2 ON:	
WINDOWS SERVER 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	
MICROSOFT SHAREPOINT SERVER 2010 ON:	
WINDOWS SERVER 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	
MICROSOFT WINDOWS SHAREPOINT SERVICES 2.0 WITH SERVICE PACK 2 ON:	
WINDOWS SERVER 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	

MICROSOFT WINDOWS SHAREPOINT SERVICES 3.0 ON:

WINDOWS SERVER 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*
*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

HARD DRIVE

106 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

716 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

MEMORY

512 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

NOTES ON SRM SHAREPOINT INSTALLATION

If SharePoint 2003 and SharePoint 2007 are installed on separate instances on the same computer, only SharePoint 2007 will be probed.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 3.5 with Service Pack 1 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 3.5 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - SRM SQL Agent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the SRM SQL Agent for Microsoft SQL Server:

APPLICATION

Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Standard and Enterprise 32-bit and x64 Editions up to the latest Service Pack
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Standard and Enterprise 32-bit and x64 Editions up to the latest Service Pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1
Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

107 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended
100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth
717 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

MEMORY

512 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive
Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.
These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - SRM UNIX File System Agent

[System Requirements](#) | [Supported Features](#)

The following requirements are for the SRM UNIX File System Agent for UNIX file system.

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
AIX	AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher Note that all AIX platforms support Logical Partitions (LPAR).	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch level of December 2008 patch bundle or higher (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
LINUX	DEBIAN	
	Debian 5.x with glibc 2.7.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	MANDRIVA	
	Mandriva Linux 2009 with glibc 2.9.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with a minimum of glibc 2.3.4	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	SUSE LINUX (SLES)	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	UBUNTU	
	Ubuntu 9.04	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Ubuntu 8.10	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors	
SOLARIS	Solaris 9	Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of SunOS (Sparc) Patch 119963-14	Sparc5 or higher recommended

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

220 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

20 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

MEMORY

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

SOLARIS ZONES/CONTAINERS SUPPORT

Data Protection of data residing on global and non-global zones is supported.

For a comprehensive list of supported components, see Unix Virtualization.

AIX LPAR/WPAR SUPPORT

Data protection on Logical Partitioning (LPAR) and Workload Partitioning (WPAR) is supported.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The operating system must have been installed with at least the `user level software` option selected.

The SRM UNIX File System Agent for UNIX File System support the file system types listed in the following table:

SUPPORTED FILE SYSTEM(S)	SRM UNIX FILE SYSTEM AGENT NAME
Extent 2 File System (ext2)	Linux
Extent 3 File System (ext3)	Linux
Extent 3 File System (ext4)	Linux
Hierarchical File System (HFS)	HP-UX
Journal File System (JFS)	AIX
Journal File System 2 (JFS2)	AIX
Reiser File System (reiserfs)	Linux
Unix File System (UFS)	Solaris
VERITAS File System (VxFS)	HP-UX, Solaris, AIX
Virtual File Allocation Table (VFAT)	Linux
'X' File System (XFS)	Linux
Zettabyte File System (ZFS)	Solaris

SELINUX

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create an SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the File
<pre><directory>/<file_name>.te</pre> <p>where:</p> <pre><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</pre> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</pre> <pre>#####</pre> <p>where:</p> <p><name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name.</p> <p><version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</p> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<pre><directory>/<file_name>.fc</pre> <p>where:</p> <pre><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</pre> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context</pre>

name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc	(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Virtual Server iDataAgent (VMware)

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Virtual Server iDataAgent:

VIRTUAL SERVER APPLICATION SOFTWARE

VMWARE ESX SERVER

VMware ESX/ ESXi 4.x, 5.0, 5.1

vSphere 4.x, 5.0, or 5.1

Before configuring Virtual Server iDataAgent for ESXi servers, consider the following:

- VADP is not available in the free version of ESXi and requires the Essentials licensing level or higher.
- Proxy computers must be running Windows Server 2008 or higher for ESX Server version 5.0 or 5.1.
- VDDK 5.0 is required for this version of ESX server. VDDK 5.0 update 1 is installed automatically with Service pack 6A or higher.

vSphere 5.5 and VDDK 5.5 are supported only in Calypso Version 10. If you need this support, CommVault recommends upgrading to Version 10. You can begin by upgrading the CommServe system, Virtual Server Agent, and MediaAgent, and upgrade the rest of the CommCell environment later.

VMWARE VCENTER SERVER APPLIANCE

VMware vCenter Server Appliance 5.0.0

VIRTUAL MACHINE HARDWARE

Version 4.0, 7.0, 8.0, 9.0

VIRTUAL MACHINE OPERATING SYSTEMS

All Guest Operating Systems supported by VADP and VCB

PROXY COMPUTER OPERATING SYSTEMS

Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 is not supported for Calypso Version 9.

Microsoft Windows Server 2012 x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions

VM LIFECYCLE MANAGEMENT

The following conditions must be considered when utilizing VM Lifecycle Management:

- VMware vCenter 4.1 is required
- VMware Tools (version 8288) must be installed on templates
- Windows Server 2008, Windows 7, and Linux (RedHat5) are supported

HARD DRIVE

100 GB recommended.

If performing backups with the granular recovery option enabled, the location of the Job Results folder should contain additional space to accommodate at least 2 percent of the total amount of data being backed up.

MEMORY

1 GB RAM minimum required; 4 GB RAM recommended.

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

ALLOCATION UNIT SIZE OF THE NTFS VOLUMES

The cluster size or the allocation unit size of an NTFS volume in a virtual machine must be multiple of 1024 bytes. You can set the cluster size before formatting a volume. The default cluster size is 4096 bytes.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

NOTES ON VIRTUAL SERVER iDATAAGENT INSTALLATIONS FOR VMWARE

For VMware, the Virtual Server iDataAgent is installed on a proxy computer that can communicate with the host computer.

Ensure that the VDDK 5.1 is not installed on any host.

SUPPORT FOR VCB ENVIRONMENT

The following utilities must be installed prior to performing any backup operations in the VCB Environment using the Virtual Server iDataAgent (these packages can be obtained from the VMware web site):

- VMware Consolidated Backup (refer to the VMware customer support web site for support information for the VMware Consolidated Backup utility.)
 - The Virtual Server iDataAgent supports all modes supported by the VMware Consolidated Backup utility.
 - Refer to the VMware customer support web site for support information for the VMware Consolidated Backup utility.
- VMware Converter 4.0.1 (refer to the VMware customer support web site for support information for the VMware Converter utility.)
 - Ensure that the guest operating systems are using the supported version of the VMware Converter.
 - The vCenter Converter Standalone 4.0.1 package must be installed for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008 environments.

Ensure that the latest version of VMware Consolidated Backup and that VMware Converter 4.0.1 are installed.

- Restores of entire virtual machines from ESX Server 4.0 to a prior version of ESX Server are not supported.
- Virtual machines from ESX Server 3.5 can be backed up through vcbmounter, but they are restored through vStorage.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - SRM Windows File System Agent

System Requirements | Supported Features

The following requirements are for the SRM Windows File System Agent for Microsoft Windows File System.

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS VISTA

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 3

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

105 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

30 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

716 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - CommNet Server

The following requirements are for the CommNet Server:

OPERATING SYSTEM

See CommServe - Operating System support

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

In addition to CommServe - Hard Disk requirements, the following are required for CommNet Server:

Solid-state-disk (SSD)

800 MB of local disk space for CommNet Server database and log file growth

300 MB of local disk space for the Microsoft SQL application and database (Microsoft SQL Server is embedded in the CommNet Server software installation)

1GB of local disk space for the CommNet Server database growth

926 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides).

In time, you may need to provide additional space (several GB) to allow for growth in the CommNet Server metadata. The size of the metadata depends on the number of Cells (CommCells) in your enterprise. The CommNet Server software does not require that the free disk space be available on a single drive.

For optimum CommNet Server performance, see CommCell Scalability Guide - Scalability Guidelines for CommServe.

MEMORY

16 GB RAM minimum

Virtual memory should be set to twice the amount of available physical memory

PROCESSOR

See CommServe - Processor support

DATABASE ENGINE

CommNet Server must be installed on Microsoft SQL Server 2008 (Enterprise Edition). CommNet installations are not supported on any other Microsoft SQL Server versions. See **Database Engine** under System Requirements - CommServe - Enterprise Version for more information.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

These requirements are in addition to the requirements of the CommServe software.

IIS

Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) Web Server version 4.0 and above.

IIS is required in the CommNet Server computer (or an alternate computer configured for web administration) to provide the following:

- Remote administration capability using the CommNet Browser as a Remote Web-Based Application
- View reports from a remote computer
- Launch the Books Online from the CommNet Browser

If the CommNet Browser software is installed on a computer running IIS version 7.0 or 7.5, the following software components must also be installed and configured along with all default components on the computer:

- ASP

- ASP.NET
- IIS 6 Management Capability

JRE

In a clustered environment, Java™ Runtime Environment (JRE) 1.7.0_17 must be installed on the passive node manually; it is automatically installed on the active node, if not already installed.

NETWORK

The CommNet Server computer requires IPv4 to obtain permanent licenses.

If a CommNet Server has both IPv4 and IPv6 sockets enabled, the CommNet Browser will always obtain an IPv4 address. If you wish to obtain and connect with an IPv6 address, the following parameter must be added to the `java/javaw` command in the Browser's target:

```
-Djava.net.preferIPv6Addresses=true
```

For example:

```
"C:\Program Files\Java\jre1.6.0\bin\javaw.exe" -jar cv.jar cranberry 8401 -oemid=1 -Djava.net.preferIPv6Addresses=true
```

Note that this configuration is supported for the CommNet Browser as a stand-alone application only. If you are running the CommNet Browser as a remote web-based application, you will always obtain an IPv4 address.

For additional information on supported Internet Protocols, refer to the Network Requirements for the Common Technology Engine software.

NOTES ON COMMNET SERVER INSTALLATION

The CommNet Server should not reside on a Microsoft Exchange Server or a computer with an Oracle database. Installation of the CommNet Server software on a Microsoft Exchange Server or a computer with an Oracle database may reduce system performance below acceptable levels.

See CommServe - Database Engine and Notes on CommServe Installation for more information.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - CommNet Browser as a Stand-Alone Application

[Stand Alone Application](#)
[Remote Web Based Application](#)

The following requirements are for the CommNet Browser as a Stand-Alone Application:

OPERATING SYSTEM		PROCESSOR
LINUX	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX AS/ES	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or x64 processors
	RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX/CENTOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium or x64 processors
MAC OS X SERVER	Mac OS X v10.4.2	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.4.1	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.4.0	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.3.9	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.3.8	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.3.7	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.3.6	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.3.5	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.3.4	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.3.3	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X 10.3.2	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X 10.3.1	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X 10.3.0	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X 10.2.8	Apple Macintosh computer that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
WINDOWS	WINDOWS 8	
	Microsoft Windows 8 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS 7	
	Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	WINDOWS VISTA	
	Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported

WINDOWS 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1 All Windows-compatible processors supported

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 3 All Windows-compatible processors supported

MEMORY

512 MB RAM minimum required; 1 GB RAM recommended
 Virtual memory should be set to twice the amount of available physical memory

DISPLAY

The graphical icons in the CommNet Browser cannot be displayed in VGA mode. This affects the appearance of the Browser's toolbar and the CommNet Browser tree. Also, some table of contents are not displayed correctly.

MISCELLANEOUS**NETWORK**

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

INTERNET EXPLORER

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) version 8.0, 9.0

Internet Protocol versions 4 (IPv4) or 6 (IPv6)

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NOTES ON COMMNET INSTALLATION**JRE**

Java™ Runtime Environment (JRE) SE v1.7.x or higher is recommended.

For computers running an Intel Itanium-based operating system, J2SDK1.4 64-bit is required.

For computers running a non-Intel Itanium-based operating system, JRE 1.7.x versions are supported.

If a JRE version lower than 1.7.x is available, or no version is available at all, you will be prompted to install JRE version 1.7.x

If a JRE version 1.7.x or higher is available, the install program will use the existing software.

On Macintosh operating systems, JRE software version 1.6.x must be installed prior to installing the CommNet Browser software.

On Linux operating systems, JRE software version 1.6.x must be installed prior to installing the CommNet Browser software.

If a CommNet Server has both IPv4 and IPv6 sockets enabled, the CommNet Browser will always obtain an IPv4 address. If you wish to obtain and connect with an IPv6 address, the following parameter must be added to the `java/javaw` command in the Browser's target:

```
-Djava.net.preferIPv6Addresses=true
```

For example:

```
"C:\Program Files\Java\jre1.6.0\bin\javaw.exe" -jar cv.jar cranberry 8401 -oemid=1 -Djava.net.preferIPv6Addresses=true
```

Note that this configuration is supported for the CommNet Browser as a stand-alone application only. If you are running the CommNet Browser as a remote web-based application, you will always obtain an IPv4 address.

For additional information on supported Internet Protocols, refer to the Network Requirements for the Common Technology Engine software.

IIS

IIS is required in the CommNet Server computer (or an alternate computer configured for web administration) to provide the following:

- Remote administration capability using the CommNet Browser as a Remote Web-Based Application
- View reports from a remote computer
- Launch the Books Online from the CommNet Browser

See Web Administration for more information on configuring web administration.

If the CommNet Browser software is installed on a computer running IIS version 7.0 or 7.5, the following software components must also be installed and configured along with all default components on the computer:

- ASP
- ASP.NET
- IIS 6 Management Capability

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - CommNet Browser as a Remote Web-Based Application

Stand Alone Application

Remote Web Based Application

The following requirements are for the CommNet Browser as a Remote Web-Based Application:

SUPPORTED WEB BROWSERS

LINUX

Mozilla 1.x

Netscape 6.2

WINDOWS

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) versions 5.01, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0

OPERATING SYSTEM

The CommNet Console as a Remote Web-Based Application is supported on any operating system running a supported Java-enabled web browser.

MISCELLANEOUS

IIS

If the CommNet Browser software is installed on a computer running IIS version 7.0 or 7.5, the following software components must also be installed and configured along with all default components on the computer:

- ASP
- ASP.NET
- IIS 6 Management Capability

JRE

Java™ Runtime Environment (JRE) 1.7.0_17 or higher recommended.

If a JRE version 1.7.0_17 or higher is available, the software will use the existing JRE software.

If the above version is not available, the Browser will automatically download the latest version from the appropriate Sun website.

In some environments, it might be necessary to configure the System Settings so that `netscape` is recognized as an executable command. This can be done by adding the installation path of Netscape to the System PATH variable as follows:

```
export $PATH=$PATH:<netscape_installation_path>
```

IIS is required in the CommNet Server computer (or an alternate computer configured for web administration) to provide the following:

- Remote administration capability using the CommNet Browser as a Remote Web-Based Application
- View reports from a remote computer
- Launch the Books Online from the CommNet Browser

See Web Administration for more information on configuring web administration.

Java plug-in is not supported on Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 editions. To run CommNet Browser as a Remote Web-Based Application, you need to install 32-bit JRE on 64-bit machines.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - 1-Touch

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	Windows
-----	-------	-------	---------	---------

OPERATING SYSTEM

The following are the requirements for 1-Touch on an AIX:

SERVER

AIX 6.1 64-bit with technology level 2 or higher (LPAR with shared fibre channel card NPIV supported)
 AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher

CLIENT

AIX 6.1 64-bit with technology level 2 or higher (LPAR with shared fibre channel card NPIV supported)
 AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher

Note that all AIX platforms support Logical Partitions (LPAR).

HARD DRIVE

The 1-Touch Server requires 2 GB of disk space per client for the 1-Touch client configuration files.

MEMORY

1 GB RAM minimum required; 2 GB RAM recommended.

PROCESSOR

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

SUPPORTED FILE SYSTEM AND VOLUME MANAGER TYPES

- AIX logical Volume Manager for Root and Non- root Volumes (LVM)
- VERITAS Volume Manager 5.0 or higher for Non root Volumes (VXVM)
- Journal File System (JFS) (AIX)
- Enhanced Journal File System (JFS2) (AIX)
- For AIX 5.3, RAW logical volume is supported for ML 10 and above

NOTES

SERVER

- The 1-Touch Server must be a dedicated AIX machine running the NIM master server environment.

CLIENT

- For 1-Touch clients with Link Aggregation or Ether Chanel, ensure that standard network adapter is configured for communication with NIM server.
- The 1-Touch server can be in the same subnet as the client computer, or it can be in a different subnet. However, if they are in different subnets, ensure that there is no network firewall between the server and the client.

For each different subnet there should be NIM network resource defined. This is important not only when NIM master and client are in different subnets, but also in case 1-Touch recovery is performed to a client that is in a different subnet than the NIM master and the original client. If the network resource is not defined for the destination client subnet and selected during recovery, 1-Touch recovery will not be successful. For more information on defining NIM network resources, refer to IBM NIM documentation.

- Only active volume group will be backed up during 1-Touch backup.
- This feature is not supported when bootable partitions are on the disk arrays (snapable disk).

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - 1-Touch

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	Windows
-----	-------	-------	---------	---------

OPERATING SYSTEM

The following are the requirements for 1-Touch on HP-UX:

SERVER

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch level of December 2008 patch bundle or higher (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)

CLIENT

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch level of December 2008 patch bundle or higher (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)

HARD DRIVE

The 1-Touch Server requires 2 GB of disk space per client for the 1-Touch client configuration files.

The 1-Touch Client requires 2 GB of disk space per client.

MEMORY

1 GB RAM minimum required; 2 GB RAM recommended.

PROCESSOR

Itanium

PA-RISC

SUPPORTED FILE SYSTEM AND VOLUME MANAGER TYPES

- HPUX Logical Volume Manager for Root and Non-Root volumes (LVM)
- VERITAS Volume Manager 5.0 or higher for Root and Non Root volumes (VxVM)
- HFS File system (HFS)
- VERITAS File System (VxFS)

NOTES

- The latest Ignite-UX software must be installed on both the 1-Touch servers and the 1-Touch clients. Ensure that the same version of this software is installed on both the servers and the clients.
- Ensure that the same version of NFS PV3 is installed on the 1-Touch servers and 1-Touch clients.
- 1-Touch Server and the client must have the same processor.

SERVER

- The 1-Touch Server must be a dedicated HP-UX machine running the Ignite server environment.

CLIENT

- Ensure that the remsh process is running on the 1-Touch client to enable a network boot from the 1-Touch server. If this process is not running, you must manually reboot the client and perform the network recovery.
- This feature is not supported when bootable partitions are on the disk arrays (snapable disk).

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - 1-Touch

AIX | HP-UX | Linux | Solaris | Windows

OPERATING SYSTEM

The following are the requirements for 1-Touch on Linux:

CLIENT

ORACLE LINUX

Oracle Enterprise Linux 5.x(Carthage) with glibc 2.5.x

RED HAT ENTERPRISE LINUX

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.0 with glibc 2.12.x*

*client must have a minimum of Service Pack 11 (SP11) installed

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.7 with glibc 2.3.x

SUSE LINUX

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

HARD DRIVE

The 1-Touch Client requires 500 MB of disk space for 1-Touch client configuration files.

MEMORY

2 GB RAM minimum required; 3 GB RAM recommended.

PROCESSOR

Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors

PERIPHERALS

A CD-ROM drive or ability to boot from an ISO image file is required to boot the 1-Touch client for recovery.

SUPPORTED FILE SYSTEM AND VOLUME MANAGER TYPES

Supported File system and volume manager types	Supported Options
Linux Logical Volume Manager (LVM) Version 2	
Second Extended File System (ext2)	Block size, blocks per group, revision
Third Extended File System (ext3)	Block size, blocks per group, revision
Fourth Extended File System (ext4)	Block size, blocks per group, revision
Reiser File System (reiserfs)	Block size, hash function, journaling device, uuid
XFS	Block size, number of allocation groups, stripe unit, inode size, maximum percentage of file system space that can be allocated to inodes, log device, lazy-count, log version, size of blocks in the real-time section

Snapshot volumes will not be recovered as part of the 1-touch recovery. Hence, it is recommended that you mount and backup the snapshot data.

NOTES

COMMSERVE

- To enable 1-Touch recovery, the **Force per-client certificate authentication on CommServe** option has to be turned off on the CommServe at least for the duration of the recovery. This option can be accessed from the CommServe **Control Panel** by clicking on **Certificate Administration**.

CLIENT

- iSCSI disks are supported for Virtualize Me; all the backed up iSCSI disks will be re-created as regular SCSI disks on the virtual machine if they are selected during restores.
- iSCSI disks are not supported for 1-Touch. These disks need to be manually unselected during interactive restores if any iSCSI disks are backed up.
- SAN disks are supported for 1-Touch and Virtualize Me. For Virtualize Me, as FC HBA (Fibre Channel Host Bus Adapter) virtualization is not supported, multipath SAN disks will be re-created as regular SCSI disks.
- 1-Touch supports native Linux multipathing. Vendor specific multipath implementations are not supported.
- Itanium (IA64) processor is not supported.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - 1-Touch

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	Windows
-----	-------	-------	---------	---------

OPERATING SYSTEM

The following are the requirements for 1-Touch on Solaris:

SERVER

Solaris 9 64-bit
 Solaris 9 4/04 64-bit
 Solaris 9 4/04 32-bit
 Solaris 9 32-bit
 Solaris 8 [Extended Support]
 Solaris 10.x 64-bit

CLIENT

Solaris 9 64-bit
 Solaris 9 4/04 64-bit
 Solaris 9 4/04 32-bit
 Solaris 9 32-bit
 Solaris 8 [Extended Support]
 Solaris 10.x 64-bit

The x64 processor is supported for Solaris 10.x 64-bit operating system. All other operating systems support Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended processors.

HARD DRIVE

The 1-Touch Server and client requires 500 MB of disk space.

MEMORY

1 GB RAM minimum required; 2 GB RAM recommended.

PROCESSOR

Sparc5 or higher recommended
 x64

SUPPORTED FILE SYSTEMS AND VOLUME MANAGER TYPES

- VERITAS Volume Manager (VxVM) 5.0 or higher (unencapsulated root volume only)
- Solaris Volume Manager (svm)
- UNIX File System (UFS)
- VERITAS File System (VxFS)
- Zettabyte File System (ZFS)

NOTES

SERVER

- The 1-Touch Server must be a dedicated Solaris machine running the Jump Start server environment.
- For 1-Touch Server, use any Solaris system that is configured as a JumpStart server and has the required networking services, which include RARP, bootp, and tftp. Configure the 1-Touch server using the Solaris Advanced Installation Guide (see, <http://docs.sun.com/app/docs/doc/802-5740>). It is recommended that you set the primary mirror as the boot device for restores to succeed.
- The Solaris JumpStart server version (including updates) should be greater than or equal to the version of the Solaris client whose data is targeted for recovery. A Solaris JumpStart server can recover data from a Solaris client whose version is equal to or less than the server version. For example, a Solaris 10 JumpStart server can recover data from Solaris 10 client, Solaris 9 client, etc. Similarly, a Solaris 9 JumpStart server cannot recover data from Solaris 10 client, but it can recover data from Solaris 9 client, Solaris 8 client, etc.
- If Solaris 10 Update 6 or above jumpstart server is used as 1-touch server, please make sure that it has `/boot/solaris/bin/root_archive`. It is required for unpacking and repacking Solaris miniroot in jumpstart server.
- Ensure that the permissions setting for an NFS share on the JumpStart server is "ro" (read-only)
- Solaris 9 and Solaris 10 boot image versions are supported.

CLIENT

- This feature is not supported when bootable partitions are on the disk arrays (snapable disk).
- iSCSI root is supported for 1-Touch.
- Solaris local zones are not supported for 1-Touch backups.
- Link aggregation is not supported for 1-Touch backups.
- I/O Multipathing(MPxIO) is not supported for root file system recovery.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - 1-Touch

AIX	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris	Windows
-----	-------	-------	---------	---------

The following are the requirements for 1-Touch on Windows:

1-TOUCH SERVER

WINDOWS 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

WINDOWS SERVER 2008 R2

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS VISTA

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions

CLIENT

WINDOWS 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

WINDOWS SERVER 2008 R2

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 x64 Editions

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS VISTA

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

WINDOWS XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions

HARD DRIVE

7 GB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

500 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.

500 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

The RAM size of the client must be two times the size of the **Live CD**. The size of the **Live CD** can vary depending on the processor type and drivers added to the image. The default size is approximately 1 GB. You can verify the size. The 1-Touch ISO image is located at:

`SystemRecovery\Images\Windows 32-bit\BOOT_IMAGE\ISO\sources`

`SystemRecovery\Images\Windows x64\BOOT_IMAGE\ISO\sources`

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

PERIPHERALS

A CD-ROM drive or ability to boot from an ISO image file is required to boot the 1-Touch client for recovery.
No server is required for 9.0

NOTES

CLIENT

- Ensure that the TCP/IP Services are configured on the computer before performing the backup.
- 1-Touch recovery is supported for systems which boot from SAN or the recovery of SAN attached disks.
- 1-Touch recovery is not supported if the system partition of the client computer is located on the FAT 32 volume.
- You must use a wired internet connection to recover a laptop.
- Use Disaster Recovery to recover a CommServe. You cannot recover a CommServe using the 1-Touch recovery.
- In a dual boot system, the operating system that is used while performing the backup will be recovered during 1-Touch recovery. You cannot recover both the operating systems.
- Ensure that windows is not installed on the drive other than C:\. The unattended installation of windows on a drive other than C:\ is not supported. You cannot perform the Online or Offline Restore when windows is installed on a drive other than C:\
- 1-Touch does not support recovery of disks managed by Veritas Volume Manager due to inconsistent results with VDS.
- 1-Touch does not support recovery of disks that has BitLocker Encryption.
- To recover a Windows XP Client, you must perform the Online Restore.
- 1-Touch recovery of Windows XP clients is not supported if multilingual user interface (MUI) is other than English language. If MUI is English, you can perform the Online restore. The Offline and Non-interactive restores are not supported for Windows XP clients.
- Ensure that the client does not have multiple active partitions. You cannot perform Offline recovery if the client has multiple active partitions.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

System Requirements - Books Online

The following requirements are for Books Online:

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

OPERATING SYSTEM

Books Online is supported on any operating system running a supported Java-enabled web browser.

SUPPORTED WEB BROWSERS

Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0

Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0

DISPLAY

It is recommended that the screen resolution be set to 1024 by 768 pixels for viewing Books Online

PERIPHERALS

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

Adobe® Acrobat® Reader 5.0 (or higher) for viewing the PDF files

You must have JavaScript enabled in your browser to navigate and view the contents of Books Online

DOWNLOADED VERSIONS OF BOOKS ONLINE

The following additional requirements apply for downloaded versions of Books Online:

- At least 300 MB of hard disk space for extracted Books Online files

See Download Books Online for more information

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

Extended Support and Deprecated Products and Platforms

EXTENDED SUPPORT

In most cases, if a third-party vendor provides extended support for a platform, that platform, as well as any products associated with it, will be considered in Extended Support. Refer to the vendor's website for exact dates until which the software will be available on extended support. While the product or platform may continue to be used on an "as-is" basis, no new features will be supported. Fixes/Updates may be provided depending on the nature of the problem.

Also note that, when the extended support expires it is automatically considered as Deprecated.

LIST OF PLATFORMS AND APPLICATIONS ON EXTENDED SUPPORT

* **Installation Package Version** column indicates the Calypso software version that must be used to install the software. Prior to installing the software create the `IgnoreCommServeVersion` registry key on the client computer.

** Windows 2000 is supported for Windows File System iDataAgent backups only. Deduplication and System State are not supported. MediaAgents and other applications such as Exchange, Microsoft SQL, etc, are also not supported.

DEPRECATED

If a third-party vendor discontinues support for a platform, that platform, as well as any products associated with it, is considered deprecated. While the product or platform may continue to be used on an "as-is" basis, the following caveats will apply:

- Fixes/updates will not be provided.
- No new features will be supported.

LIST OF DEPRECATED APPLICATIONS AND PLATFORMS

The following applications and platforms are currently considered as deprecated:

APPLICATION/PLATFORM	INSTALLATION PACKAGE VERSION
Oracle 9i (9.2) Database (Enterprise or Standard Edition)	Calypso 9.0
AIX 5.2 32-bit and 64-bit editions	Calypso 8.0
Apple Macintosh computer with a PowerPC G4 or G5 processor that supports any of the operating systems	Calypso 8.0
BlueArc OS 3.0	Calypso 8.0
Celerra 5.4	Calypso 8.0
Debian 3.0	Calypso 8.0
Debian 4.0	Calypso 8.0
EMC Celerra DART OS 5.3	Calypso 8.0
FreeBSD 5.x	Calypso 8.0
FreeBSD 6.x	Calypso 8.0
FreeBSD 7.0	Calypso 8.0
FreeBSD 7.1	Calypso 8.0
FreeBSD 7.2	Calypso 8.0
HDS NAS 3.1	Calypso 8.0
Informix 10.x	Calypso 8.0
Informix 11.10x	Calypso 8.0
Informix 9.20	Calypso 8.0
Informix 9.21	Calypso 8.0
Informix 9.30	Calypso 8.0
Intel Itanium on Windows	Calypso 8.0
Lotus Domino Server Release 7.0.x 32-bit	Calypso 9.0
Microsoft Exchange 2000 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack	Calypso 9.0
Microsoft Exchange 2000 Server up to the latest service pack	Calypso 9.0
Microsoft Outlook 2000	Calypso 8.0
Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Editions up to the latest Service Pack	Calypso 8.0
Microsoft Windows Server 2000	Calypso 8.0
NetApp ONTAP version 6.5.5	Calypso 8.0
Netware File System iDataAgent	Calypso 8.0
Quick Recovery Agent	Calypso 8.0
Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x	Calypso 8.0
SGI IRIX64 6.5 with revision 7.4.2 runtime libraries	Calypso 8.0
Solaris 8	Calypso 9.0
SuSE Linux 9.x Enterprise Server	Calypso 8.0
Sybase ASE 12.5.3 ESD#6 32-bit	Calypso 9.0
Sybase ASE 12.5.3 ESD#6 64-bit	Calypso 9.0
Sybase ASE 12.5.4 32-bit	Calypso 9.0
Sybase ASE 12.5.4 64-bit	Calypso 9.0
Tru64 OSF 5.1A and 5.1B	Calypso 9.0

Ubuntu 7.10	Calypso 8.0
-------------	-------------

* **Installation Package Version** column indicates the Calypso software version that must be used to install the software. Prior to installing the software create the `bIgnoreCommServeVersion` registry key on the client computer.

LIST OF DEPRECATED PRODUCTS

The following products are currently considered as deprecated.

PRODUCT/PLATFORM	INSTALLATION PACKAGE VERSION
Exchange Web Folder	Calypso 8.0
File Archiver for NetWare	Calypso 8.0
Image Level ProxyHost	Calypso 8.0
NetWare MediaAgent	Calypso 8.0
Recovery Director	Calypso 8.0
SRM Exchange Agent	Calypso 8.0
SRM NetWare Proxy Agent	Calypso 8.0
SRM Oracle Agent	Calypso 8.0
SRM SharePoint Agent	Calypso 8.0
SRM SQL Agent	Calypso 8.0
SRM Virtual Server Agent	Calypso 8.0
CommServe on 32-bit versions	Calypso 8.0
Content Indexing Engine	Use version 10 Search Engine for new deployments.

LIST OF DEPRECATED FEATURES

The following features are currently considered as deprecated.

FEATURE	ALTERNATIVES
SRM File Level Analytics	File Level Analytics File Level Analytics provides granular file level details of files in the backup. The granular details include information like file size, file access time, file modified time, etc.
Online Content Indexing for File System Agent	
Online Content Indexing for Exchange Agent	
Splitting and Merging CommCells	CommCell Migration (CCM) Starting from Service Pack 7B of version 9.0, the CommCell Clone tool is deprecated and no longer available for use. In cases where an existing CommCell needs to be split, the CommCell Migration can be used as a replacement for the Clone functionality. CommCell Migration allows you to export CommCell objects and import them into another CommCell. If an existing CommCell needs to be split into multiple CommCells, you can export the objects that need to be moved and import them into the new or fresh CommCell. Using the CommCell clone tool the entire CommCell was copied 100% and given a new CommCell ID. Once the name changes were completed on the Child CommCell, the new child CommCell could be used after disabling and deconfiguring the not needed entities on the exiting CommCell. Using the CommCell Migration tool, gives you the flexibility to export the items you want to utilize in the child CommCell. You can create a new CommCell and merge in the exported items from the original source CommCell. Once the name change operation is completed, the new objects belong to the Child CommCell. In both the CommCell Clone and CommCell Migration, the imported Mount Paths are marked as read-only. Follow the instructions for a CommCell Migration (CCM) operation to migrate the needed objects and create the split CommCell as needed. Keep in mind that CommCell Migration requires the CommCell Migration license on the source and destination CommCells. Make sure that the destination CommCell (s) have adequate licenses for the imported objects.
EDC NetApp	
Desktop Browse for File System Agents	
Desktop Browse for File Archiver Agents	

INSTALLATION

You can install the platforms listed in Extended Support or Deprecated sections using the Calypso software version indicated in the above Installation Package Version column. If the indicated Package version is a previous version, perform the following:

FOR WINDOWS

CREATING THE BIGNORECOMMSEERVEVERSION KEY

Create the `bIgnoreCommServeVersion` registry key on the client computer as followed and then install the Software component:

1. Click **Start**, click **Run**, type **regedit**, and then click **OK**.
2. Navigate to the following directory:
`HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\`
3. Right click the `SOFTWARE` and click **New -> Key**.
4. Name the key as `GalaxyInstallerFlags`.
5. Right click the `GalaxyInstallerFlags` and select **New -> DWORD** value, name it as `bIgnoreCommServeVersion`
6. Double-click the `bIgnoreCommServeVersion` key modify the **Value data** to **1**.
7. Install the Software Component.

FOR UNIX

Navigate to Software Installation Package or mount path and then run the following command:

```
./cvpkgadd -allow-newer-commserve
```

[Back to Top](#)

PRODUCT OBSOLESCENCE POLICY

Full support for the Bull Calypso software is provided for the current generally available release and one previous product release.

When a Bull product release has reached End of Lifecycle (EOL), your software provider will issue several notices outlining the effective date of obsolescence. Full or limited support for the product release will be provided from the date of announcement through the date of obsolescence. Visit the Bull Product Support website at <http://support.bull.com> for more information on the EOL process.

When a third-party vendor operating system, application, or hardware product has reached EOL, your software provider will publish notification of obsolescence at a pre-determined location. All engineering support for a third-party vendor operating system, application, or hardware product that has reached EOL will expire immediately upon the release of the notification of obsolescence. Bull Calypso Customer Support will provide commercially reasonable assistance to customers with unsupported platforms and applications limited to Tier One support assistance where possible. No hot fixes or updates will be released as part of this assistance. Please check with your software provider for specific details on how to access EOL notifications for third-party vendor products.

Click the Table of Contents links in the left-pane to display a page.

